

smart

smart #5
User Manual

Indicator and warning lamps 8

FAQ 11

At a Glance 15
Interior Overview 15
Cockpit 15
Warning lamps and indicator lamps 16
Overhead control panel 19
Door control panel and seat adjustment 19
Exterior Overview 20
Exterior equipment 20
Emergency and malfunction 21

General Notes 23
About this Manual 23
Electronic User Manual 23
About the Vehicle 23
Environmental protection 23
Genuine smart parts 24
Operating safety 24
OBD data link connector 25
smart Authorized Service Partner 26
Vehicle registration 26
Correct use of the vehicle 26
Information on the REACH regulation 26
QR code for rescue card 27
Declaration of Conformity 27
Electromagnetic compatibility 27
Radio equipment in the vehicle 27
Data Storage 28
Event data recorder 28
Vehicle data record 28
Online service 29

Occupant Safety 30
Safety Systems 30
Overview of safety system 30
Malfunctioning safety system 30
Functions of safety system in an accident 30
Seat Belts 32
Protection provided by the seat belt 32
Notes on the seat belt 32
Pregnancy safety 33
Fastening the seat belts 33
Releasing a seat belt 34
Seat belt pretensioner 34
Seat belt load limit 34
Seat belt reminder 34
Airbags 35
Overview of the airbags 35
Airbag warning notes 35
Protection provided by the airbags 36
State of the passenger airbag 37
Enabling and disabling the passenger airbag 37
Traveling Safely with Children in the Vehicle 38
Notes on traveling with children in the vehicle 38
Detecting risks and avoiding dangers 38
Suitability of the seats for attaching child restraint systems 40
Notes on installing a child restraint system 43
Installing an ISOFIX or an i-Size child restraint system 43
Attaching TOP TETHER to the front passenger seat 44
Attaching Top Tether to a second-row seat 45
Installing the seat belt-secured child restraint system 45

Notes on installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat 46
Child locks 46
Traveling Safely with Pets in the Vehicle 47
Notes on pets in the vehicle 47
In-car life detection 47
Overview of the in-car life detection system 47
In-car life detection reminder 47

Opening and Closing 49
Keys 49
Overview of the key functions 49
Find My Car 52
Enabling/disabling the lock tone 52
Enabling/disabling the Double Click Unlock 52
Removing and installing the mechanical key 52
Replacing the keyfob battery 53
Problems with keys 53
Doors 54
Unlocking/opening the doors from inside 54
Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the central lock 55
Unlocking/locking the vehicle with Keyless Entry 55
Approach to Unlock/Walk Away to Lock 55
Automatic lock on drive 56
Auto Unlock in Emergency 56
Auto Unlock in P gear 56
Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the mechanical key 57
Double Lock (if equipped) 57
Liftgate 57
Opening the liftgate 57
Closing the liftgate 58
Kick-sensing power liftgate (if equipped) 59
Setting the opening angle of the power liftgate 59
Opening the liftgate mechanically 60
Windows 60
Opening and closing the windows 60
Window's anti-pinch feature 61
Controlling the windows from the centre display 61
Auto Window Closing while Locking 62
Easy opening 62
Easy closing 62
Problems with windows 62
Sunroof 63
Opening and closing the sunshade 63
Anti-theft Protection 63
Anti-theft system 63
Enabling/disabling the anti-theft protection 64
Disabling the triggered anti-theft alarm 64
Steering wheel lock (if equipped) 64
Motion and tilting alarm (if equipped) 65
Vehicle intrusion alarm (if equipped) 65

Seats and Storage 66
Seats 66
Adjusting the driver's seat to optimal position 66
Electrically adjusting the front seats 66
Adjusting the second row seats 68
Folding/unfolding the second-row seat backrests 68
Head restraint 69

Seat comfort 69
Steering Wheel 71
Manually adjusting the steering wheel 71
Memory Function 72
Notes on memory function 72
Memory function of the seat 72
Storage Space 73
Notes on loading the vehicle 73
Interior storage space 74
Opening/closing the boot floor cover 75
Boot curtain 76
Overview of boot hooks 76
Luggage retention buckle in the boot 77
Notes on the roof racks 77
Power Sockets 77
Using the 12 V power supply 77
USB 78
USB port 78
Wireless Mobile Phone Charging 79
Notes on wireless charging 79
Charging the mobile phone wirelessly 79
Floor Mats 80
Floor mats 80

Lights and Vision 82
Exterior Lights 82
Information about the lighting system and your responsibilities 82
Light switch 82
Operating the combination switch 82
Turning on/off the hazard warning lights 83
Illumination delayed turnoff 83
Approach lighting 83
Automatically turning on/off the lights 84
Headlamp leveling 84
Adaptive Front-lighting System (if equipped) 84
Adaptive High Beam (if equipped) 85
Automatic High Beam (if equipped) 86
Rear fog lamp 87
Reversing lamp 87
Emergency stop signal 87
Courtesy light 87
Interior Lighting 88
Adjusting the interior lighting 88
Adjusting the ambient lighting 89
Windscreen Wiper and Washer System 89
Operating the front wiper 89
Operating the rear wiper 90
Rear wiper auto activation setting 90
Front wiper maintenance mode 90
Replacing the front wiper blades 90
Replacing the rear wiper blade 91
Exterior and interior mirrors 91
Adjusting the exterior door mirrors 91
Automatic anti-dazzle interior rearview mirror 91
Adjusting the interior rearview mirror manually 92
Exterior door mirrors heating 92
Exterior door mirrors folding 92
Exterior door mirrors tilt-down when reversing 92
Sun Visors 92
Operating the sun visors 92

Climate Control System 94
Overview of the Climate Control 94

Physical buttons of the Climate Control 94
Climate bar on centre display 94
Operating the Climate Control..... 95
Enabling/disabling the Climate Control 95
Setting the Climate Control to AUTO..... 95
Adjusting the air outlets..... 95
Setting the recirculation mode..... 95
Front windscreen defrosting 95
Rear windscreen defrosting..... 95
Enabling/disabling the steering wheel heating..... 96
Climate Setting..... 96
Operating the Climate Control 96
Interior air quality system (if equipped)..... 96
Air outlets 97
Armrest box ventilation..... 98

Charging and Discharging the Vehicle 99
Charging the High Voltage Battery 99
Notes on charging the high voltage battery 99
Vehicle charging ports and charging methods 100
Travel Schedule 101
Charging port indicator lamp.....102
Opening and closing the charging port cover.....102
Opening the charging port cover in mechanical way 102
Start charging 103
Stop charging.....104
Unlocking the charging gun in an emergency 104
Vehicle Discharging 105
Location of vehicle discharging port 105
Notes on vehicle discharging.....105
Vehicle discharging 105

Driving 107
Driving.....107
Notes on electric vehicle.....107
Notes on driving 107
Winter driving 109
Recommended practices.....109
Starting the vehicle 111
Powering off the vehicle 112
Shifting by column-mounted electronic shifter 112
s-Pedal.....113
Drive Modes.....114
Overview of drive modes.....114
Selecting a drive mode 115
Rocket Launch (if equipped) 115

Intelligent Chassis 117
Brake 117
Parking.....117
Electric parking brake (EPB).....117
Auto Hold 118
Electronic Stability Control.....118
Sport mode of Electronic Stability Control 119
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 119
Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) 119
Brake Assist.....119
Comfort Braking.....120
Post-impact Braking (PIB) 120
Power Steering Assist 120
Cornering Brake Control 120
Hill Assist 121
Hill Descent Control (HDC) 121
Regenerative Braking.....121

Intelligent driving....123
Driver Assistance and Driving Safety Systems....123
Driver assistance systems and your responsibilities....123
Driver assistance system sensors....123
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)....125
Lane Centring Control (LCC)....130
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)....136
Lane Change Assist (LCA)....139
Front Collision Mitigation (FCM)....140
Rear Collision Mitigation (RCM)....144
Blind Spot Safety Assist....145
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)....146
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)....148
Door Opening Warning (DOW)....149
Evasive Manoeuvre Assist System....150
Speed Limiting (LIM)....151
Audio prompt for Driving Assist....152
Acoustic Vehicle Alert System....152
Driver Monitoring System (DMS)....153
Parking Assist....154
Parking Assist System....154
Front Parking Assist Warning....157
Rear Parking Assist Warning....157
Automatic Parking Assist (APA)....157
Parking in a parking space....159
Parking Emergency Brake (If Equipped)....160
Park Assist 360 Camera....161

Driver Display....164
Driver Information Display....164
Notes on driver information display....164
Overview of driver information display....164
Operating the driver information display....165
Warning lamps and indicator lamps....166
Head-up display (if equipped)....171
Notes on the head-up display....171
Overview of head-up display....172
Enabling/disabling the head-up display....172
Adjusting the head-up display....173
Setting the head-up display....173

Centre Display....175
Overview and Operation....175
Notes on operating the centre display....175
Overview of centre display....175
Overview of the steering wheel buttons....177
Quick Controls Interface....178
Quick Controls interface....178
Function area....179
Brightness adjustment area....179
Message & notification area....180
Mode selection area....180
Desktop theme selection area....182
Volume adjustment area....182
Setting Interface....182
Overview of setting interface....182
Quick Controls....183
Lights....184
Ambient light....185

Driving assistance 185
Vehicle Settings 186
Sound 187
General 188
Energy management 189
Intelligent Speech 190
Vehicle condition 191
System 191
Privacy 193
Storage management 193
Seat interface 193
Seat interface 193
Navigation and Traffic 194
Navigation (if equipped) 194
Multimedia 195
Overview of multimedia 195
Local radio 195
Bluetooth music 196
USB music 196
Voice Assistant 197
Voice control function 197
Phone 197
Phone function 197
Personal Centre 198
Personal centre function (if equipped) 198
Smartphone Integration 198
Android Auto 198
Apple CarPlay 200
Wired screen mirroring 201

Passenger side display 202
Overview and operation 202
Notes on operating the passenger side display 202
Overview of passenger side display 202
Quick Controls Interface 203
Quick Controls interface 203

Breakdown Assistance 205
Emergency Equipment 205
Using a safety vest 205
Warning triangle 205
Fixing point of fire extinguisher 205
Fire extinguisher 205
Flat Tyre 205
Storage location of tyre repair kit 205
Tyre repair kit 206
Jump-Starting the Vehicle 207
Notes on jump start 207
Jump start 207
Vehicle Transport 208
Vehicle transportation methods 208
Rescue mode 209
Tow hook 209

Wheels and Tyres 211
Notes on Wheels and Tyres 211
Notes on noise or abnormal manoeuvrability 211
Notes on regularly inspecting the wheels and tyres 211
Notes on snow chains 211
Tyre Pressure 212
Notes on tyre pressure 212
Tyre pressure table 213
Tyre pressure monitoring system 213
Checking and correcting the tyre pressure manually 214
Replacing Wheels and Tyres 214
Notes on replacing the wheels and tyres 214
Notes on rotating the wheels 216
Notes on storing the wheels 217
Removing the wheel trim cover (if equipped) 217
Tyre markings 217
Seasonal Tyres 218
All-season tyres 218

Summer tyres....218
Winter tyres....218

Maintenance and Care 219
Lifting the Vehicle 219
Vehicle lifting points....219
Front Compartment....219
Opening and closing the bonnet....219
Checking the coolant level 221
Topping up the windscreen washer system....222
Cleaning and Care 222
Notes on washing the vehicle....222
Notes on using high pressure car washer 223
Washing the vehicle manually 223
Notes on paintwork/matte finish paintwork care 224
Notes on cleaning the decorative film 224
Notes on external parts maintenance....225
Notes on cleaning the interior 227
Batteries....229
Notes on the 12 V battery 229
Start assist and charging the 12 V battery 230
Replacing the 12 V battery 230
Notes on the high voltage battery 230
Fuses 231
Replacing fuses 231

Technical Data 232
Notes on Technical Data 232
Technical data description 232
On-Board Electronics....232
Notes on unauthorized alteration of motor and electronic equipment....232
Vehicle Identification Plate, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and Drive Motor Serial Number 232
Vehicle identification plate....232
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 232
Drive motor serial number....233
Operating Fluids 234
Note on the operating fluids....234
Notes on the brake fluid 234
Coolant 234
Notes on the windscreen washer fluid 234
Refrigerant 235
Vehicle Specifications 236
Vehicle dimensions....236
Vehicle performance specifications....236
Suspension system specifications....237
Weight and payload....238
Battery Specifications....238
E-motor specifications....239
Brake system specifications 239
Requirements for wheel dynamic balance....240
Recommended tyre pressure 240

Icon	Name	Icon	Name
	Low Beam on indicator lamp		Braking performance degraded/braking distance extended warning lamp
	Low beam fault warning lamp		Brake System fault warning lamp
	High beam on indicator lamp		High voltage battery low indicator lamp
	High beam fault warning lamp		s-Pedal on indicator lamp
	Adaptive High Beam ready indicator lamp/Automatic High Beam on indicator lamp		s-Pedal on indicator lamp
	Adaptive High Beam on indicator lamp (if equipped)		Electronic Stability Control off indicator lamp
	Adaptive High Beam/Automatic High Beam fault warning lamp		Electronic Stability Control fault warning lamp
	Rear fog lamp on indicator lamp		Driver Monitoring System level 1 fatigue indicator lamp
	Position lamp on indicator lamp		Driver Monitoring System level 2 fatigue indicator lamp
	Position lamp fault warning lamp		Driver Monitoring System facial detection indicator
	Powertrain/high voltage battery/drive motor system fault warning lamp		Driver Monitoring System fault warning lamp
	EPAS performance degraded/assist level down warning lamp		Lane Keeping Assist fault warning lamp
	EPAS fault – no power assist warning lamp		Lane Keeping Assist off indicator lamp
	Airbag fault warning lamp		Rear Cross Traffic Alert/Rear Collision Mitigation/Door Opening Warning/Blind Spot Detection/Lane Change Assist fault warning lamp

Icon	Name	Icon	Name
	Turn signal indicator lamp		Hill Descent Control ready indicator lamp
	Adaptive Front-lighting System fault warning lamp (if equipped)		Hill Descent Control active indicator lamp
	Electronic Parking Brake indicator lamp		Hill Descent Control fault warning lamp
	READY Indicator lamp		Front Collision Mitigation failure warning lamp
	Speed Limiting ready indicator lamp		Front Collision Mitigation off indicator lamp
	Speed Limit enabled indicator lamp		Charging/discharging gun connected warning lamp
	Speed Limiting fault warning lamp		Driver seat belt warning indicator lamp
	Adaptive Cruise Control ready indicator lamp		Front passenger seat belt warning indicator lamp
	Adaptive Cruise Control active indicator lamp		Rear seat belt warning indicator lamp
	Adaptive Cruise Control fault warning lamp		Auto Hold indicator lamp
	Lane Centring Control ready indicator lamp		12 V battery low indicator lamp
	Lane Centring Control active indicator lamp		Trailer hitch unlock indicator lamp (if equipped)
	Lane Centring Control lateral control off indicator lamp		Trailer hitch not connected and coupling device locked indicator lamp (if equipped)
	Lane Centring Control fault warning lamp		Trailer hitch connected and coupling device locked indicator lamp (if equipped)
	Power limit indicator lamp		Towing module fault warning lamp (if equipped)

Icon	Name	Icon	Name
	Anti-lock Brake System fault warning lamp		Child lock on indicator lamp
	Tyre pressure abnormal warning lamp		Acoustic Vehicle Alert System off indicator lamp
	In-car Life Detection System off indicator lamp		

You may encounter the following problems during daily use of the vehicle. Please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner if the answers below cannot solve your problems.

How do I start the vehicle?

1. Unlock the vehicle and open the driver side door.
2. Press the brake pedal, and shift into D or R gear, then the indicator lamp READY on the driver information display will come on, and the vehicle will run normally.

How do I jump-start the vehicle?

If the vehicle requires being jump started, please refer to the topics related to jump start.

Notes on jump start(→ Page 207).

Jump start procedure (→ Page 207).

How to charge the high voltage battery?

To charge the high voltage battery, please refer to the topics related to high voltage battery charging.

Notes on charging the high voltage battery (→ Page 99).

High voltage battery charging procedure (→ Page 103).

How to find a charging station quickly?

Open the navigation (if equipped) on the centre display and follow the navigation information.

How to solve tyre malfunctions?

To solve tyre malfunctions, please refer to the topics related to tyre malfunctions.

Checking and correcting the tyre pressure manually (→ Page 214).

Tyre repair kit (→ Page 206).

When the punctures are not more than 6 mm and the outside temperature is not less than -20°C, the tyre repair kit can be used.

How to transport the vehicle after breakdown?

When the vehicle needs to be transported after breakdown, please refer to the topics related to vehicle transportation.

Activating the Rescue mode (→ Page 209).

Vehicle transportation methods (→ Page 208).

How to open the damaged or frozen charging port cover?

Do not open the charging port cover by force to avoid damaging any components. Please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Can I add any grade of coolant?

Not all grades of coolant available on the market are suitable for your vehicle. Please drive to a smart Authorized Service Partner if the coolant needs to be added or changed.

Can the door be opened and the vehicle be started when the keyfob battery dies?

When the keyfob battery dies, you may open and start the vehicle by the following ways:

- Open the door with the mechanical key.
  1. Removing and installing the mechanical key (→ Page 52).
  2. Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the mechanical key(→ Page 57).

  Replacing the keyfob battery (→ Page 53).
- Open the door and start the vehicle with the NFC key or the Bluetooth® key (if equipped) on smart APP.

If the vehicle still cannot be started, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Welcome to smart

Before driving off for the first time, please read the User Manual carefully and familiarise yourself with the vehicle. For your personal safety and a long service life of the vehicle, please follow the instructions and warnings and precautions in the User Manual. Disregarding them may result in vehicle damage or personal injury.

The configuration of your vehicle may vary from the description in the User Manual depending on the following factors:

- Model
- Order
- Market region

smart is continuously committed to further development of its vehicles.

The illustrations in the User Manual show a left-hand drive vehicle. On right-hand drive vehicles, the layout of components and control elements differs from the illustrations accordingly.

smart reserves the right to introduce changes in:

- Design
- Configuration
- Technical features

The actual configuration of your vehicle may differ from the descriptions and illustrations.

The printed documents are integral parts of the vehicle. Ensure that these documents are kept in the vehicle. If you resell the vehicle, please transfer all documents to the new owner.

Symbols

The User Manual includes the following symbols:

WARNING Danger due to failure to observe the warning notes

Warning notes draw your attention to hazards that may endanger the health or life of you or others.

► Observe the warning notes.

NOTE Damage to property due to failure to observe the notes on material damage

Notes on material damage remind you of risks which could lead to vehicle damage.

► Observe the notes on material damage.

ENVIRONMENTAL NOTE Environmental damage due to failure to observe environmental notes

Environmental notes include information on environmentally responsible behaviour or disposal.

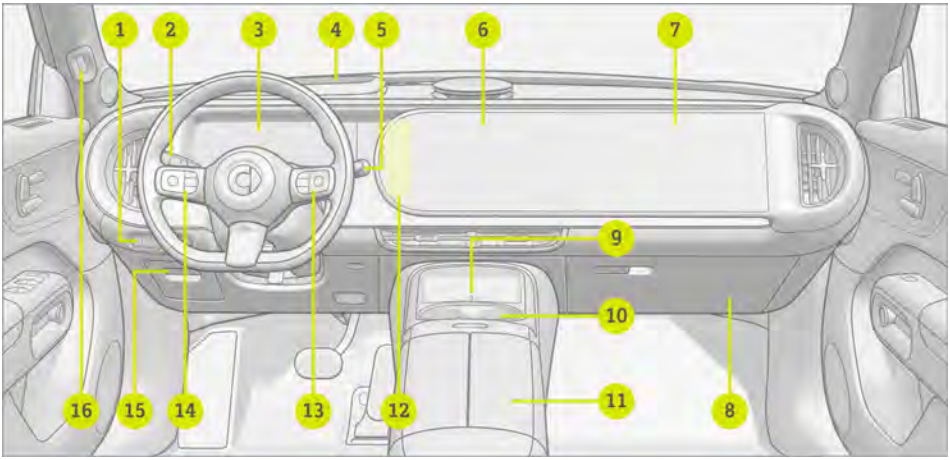
► Observe environmental notes.

Useful instructions or further information that could be helpful.

(→ Page)	Further information on a topic
>	Corresponding sub-menu to be selected in multimedia system
*	Marks a cause

Interior Overview

Cockpit



1 Light switch
Liftgate switch
Bonnet switch

2 Lamplight combination switch
Wiper control switch

3 Driver information display

4 Head-up display (if equipped)

5 Shifting by column-mounted electronic shifter

6 Centre display

7 Passenger side display (if equipped)

8 Glove box

9 Mobile phone wireless charging area

10 Centre console cup holders

11 Centre console armrest box storage area

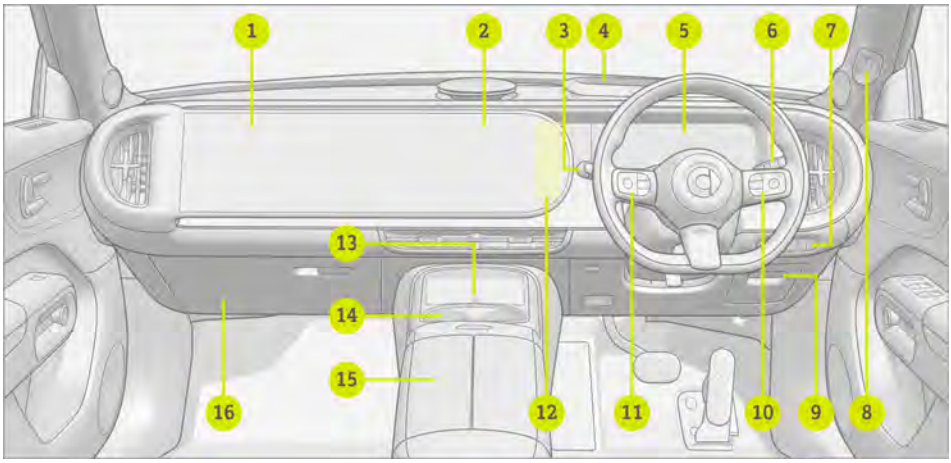
12 Buttons on centre display

13 Steering wheel right control button

14 Steering wheel left control button

15 Driver side lower storage box

16 Driver Monitoring System camera



1. Passenger side display (if equipped)
2. Centre display
3. Lamplight combination switch
   Wiper control switch
4. Head-up display (if equipped)
5. Driver information display
6. Shifting by column-mounted electronic shifter
7. Light switch
   Liftgate switch
   Bonnet switch
8. Driver Monitoring System camera
9. Driver side lower storage box
10. Steering wheel right control button
11. Steering wheel left control button
12. Buttons on centre display
13. Mobile phone wireless charging area
14. Centre console cup holders
15. Centre console armrest box storage area
16. Glove box

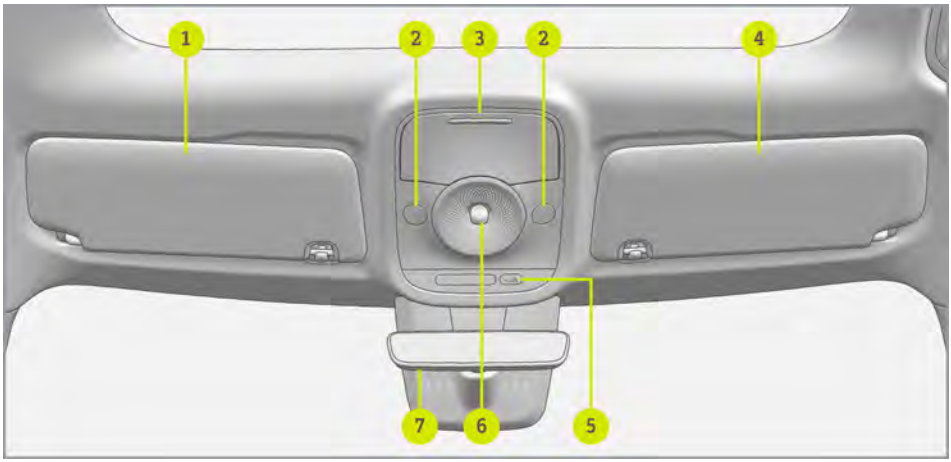
Warning lamps and indicator lamps

Icon	Name	Icon	Name
	Low Beam on indicator lamp		Braking performance degraded/braking distance extended warning lamp
	Low beam fault warning lamp		Brake System fault warning lamp
	High beam on indicator lamp		High voltage battery low indicator lamp
	High beam fault warning lamp	s-Pedal	s-Pedal on indicator lamp
	Adaptive High Beam ready indicator lamp/Automatic High Beam on indicator lamp	s-Pedal	s-Pedal on indicator lamp

Icon	Name	Icon	Name
	Adaptive High Beam on indicator lamp (if equipped)		Electronic Stability Control off indicator lamp
	Adaptive High Beam/Automatic High Beam fault warning lamp		Electronic Stability Control fault warning lamp
	Rear fog lamp on indicator lamp		Driver Monitoring System level 1 fatigue indicator lamp
	Position lamp on indicator lamp		Driver Monitoring System level 2 fatigue indicator lamp
	Position lamp fault warning lamp		Driver Monitoring System facial detection indicator
	Powertrain/high voltage battery/drive motor system fault warning lamp		Driver Monitoring System fault warning lamp
	EPAS performance degraded/ assist level down warning lamp		Lane Keeping Assist fault warning lamp
	EPAS fault – no power assist warning lamp		Lane Keeping Assist off indicator lamp
	Airbag fault warning lamp		Rear Cross Traffic Alert/Rear Collision Mitigation/Door Opening Warning/Blind Spot Detection/Lane Change Assist fault warning lamp
	Turn signal indicator lamp		Hill Descent Control ready indicator lamp
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System fault warning lamp (if equipped)		Hill Descent Control active indicator lamp
	Electronic Parking Brake indicator lamp		Hill Descent Control fault warning lamp
READY	READY Indicator lamp		Front Collision Mitigation failure warning lamp
	Speed Limiting ready indicator lamp		Front Collision Mitigation off indicator lamp

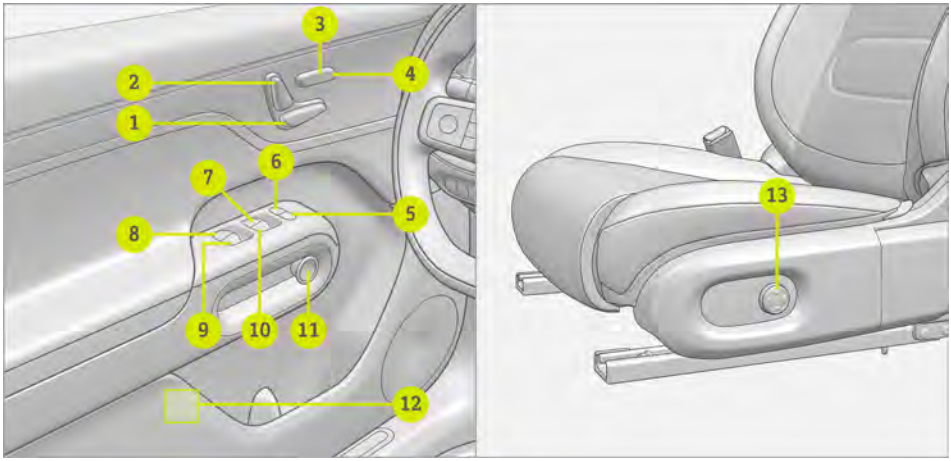
Icon	Name	Icon	Name
	Speed Limit enabled indicator lamp		Charging/discharging gun connected warning lamp
	Speed Limiting fault warning lamp		Driver seat belt warning indicator lamp
	Adaptive Cruise Control ready indicator lamp		Front passenger seat belt warning indicator lamp
	Adaptive Cruise Control active indicator lamp		Rear seat belt warning indicator lamp
	Adaptive Cruise Control fault warning lamp		Auto Hold indicator lamp
	Lane Centring Control ready indicator lamp		12 V battery low indicator lamp
	Lane Centring Control active indicator lamp		Trailer hitch unlock indicator lamp (if equipped)
	Lane Centring Control lateral control off indicator lamp		Trailer hitch not connected and coupling device locked indicator lamp (if equipped)
	Lane Centring Control fault warning lamp		Trailer hitch connected and coupling device locked indicator lamp (if equipped)
	Power limit indicator lamp		Towing module fault warning lamp (if equipped)
	Anti-lock Brake System fault warning lamp		Child lock on indicator lamp
	Tyre pressure abnormal warning lamp		Acoustic Vehicle Alert System off indicator lamp
	In-car Life Detection System off indicator lamp		

Overhead control panel



1. Left sun visor
2. Front reading lamp
3. Glasses box
4. Right sun visor
5. SOS emergency call button (if equipped)
6. Sunroof sunshade switch
7. Interior mirror

Door control panel and seat adjustment

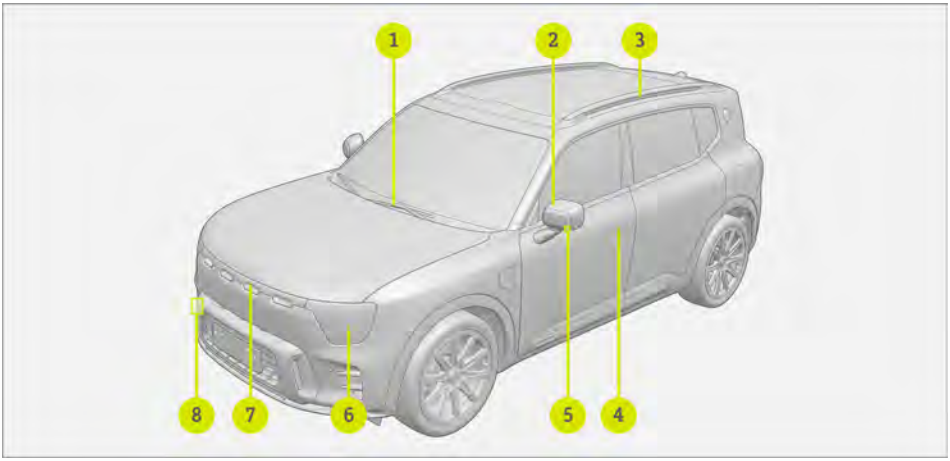


1. Adjusting the seat position forward or backward/adjusting the seat cushion position
2. Adjust the seat backrest position
3. Turn on/off the seat heating
4. Turn on/off the seat ventilation (if equipped)
5. Lock the vehicle
6. Unlock the vehicle
7. Driver's window
8. Second-row left window

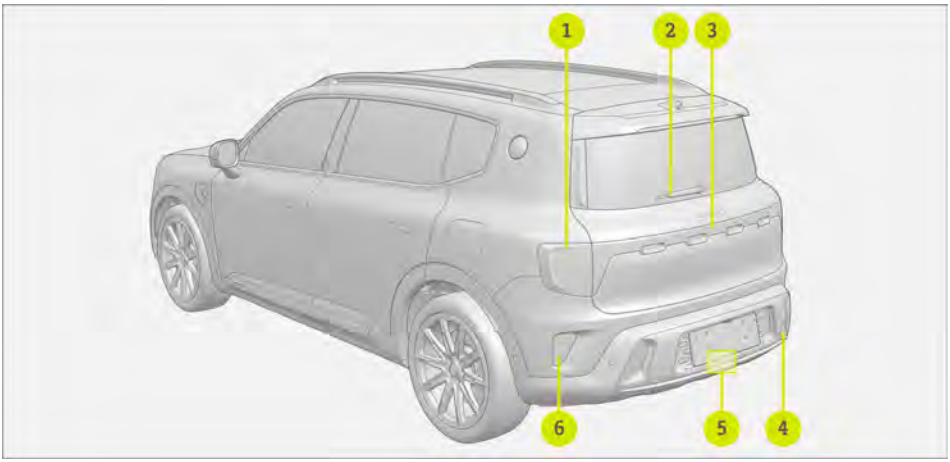
9 Second-row right window
10 Front passenger window
11 Door switch
12 Emergency door handle
13 Adjust the lumbar support

Exterior Overview

Exterior equipment

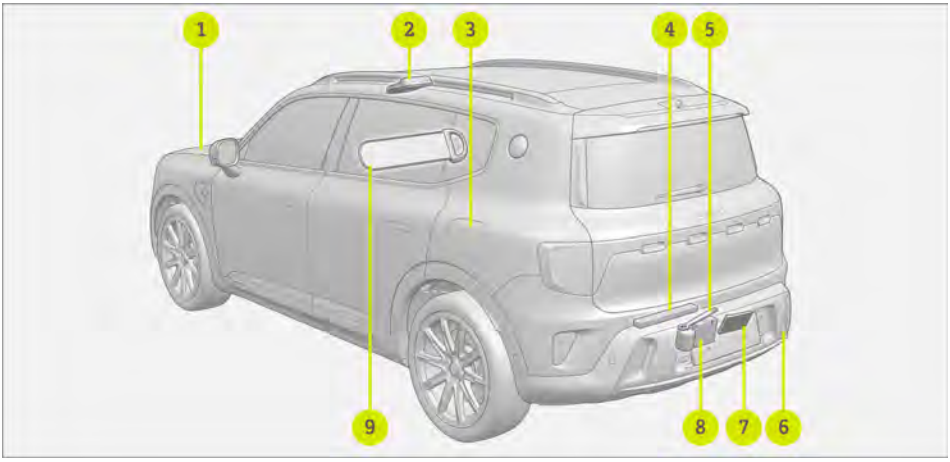


1 Front wipers
2 Exterior door mirrors
3 Roof rack
4 Door handle
5 Courtesy light
6 Lighting
High beams
Low beams
Daytime running light
Position lamp
Turn signal light
7 Middle position lamp
8 Front tow hook cover



1 Signal lamp
Brake lamp
Position lamp
Turn signal light
2 Rear wiper
3 Middle position lamp
High-mounted brake lamp
4 Rear tow hook cover
5 Automatic hitch extension (if equipped)
6 Rear fog lamp
Reversing lamp

Emergency and malfunction



1 Operating fluids
2 SOS emergency call button (if equipped)
3 Charging port cover with the following label
Charging warning label
4 Warning triangle
5 Tow hook
6 Rear tow hook cover
7 Safety vest
8 Tyre repair kit

9 Hazard warning light

About this Manual

Electronic User Manual

The electronic User Manual contains detailed description of the vehicle's functions and operation.

Note that your vehicle may not have all the features described in the manual. Therefore, the configuration of your vehicle may differ from the description and illustration in the User Manual, refer to the actual vehicle.

If you have any questions concerning configuration and operation, please consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.

As smart constantly improves its products and services, the User Manual will be updated from time to time. You can find the current version on the APP (if equipped) or smart local official website.

ⓘ The electronic version of the User Manual will be continuously updated and upgraded.

smart reserves the right to change the User Manual at any time.

About the Vehicle

Environmental protection

ENVIRONMENTAL NOTE Environmental damage due to operating conditions and personal driving style

Drive the vehicle in an environmental responsible manner to protect the environment. Observe the following recommendations on operating conditions and personal driving style.

Operating conditions:

- ► Make sure that the tyre pressure is normal.
- ► Do not carry unnecessary loads (for example, do not carry child seats that are no longer needed).
- ► Monitor the energy consumption.
- ► Adhere to the service intervals.
- ► A regularly serviced vehicle will contribute to environmental protection.

Personal driving style:

- ► Drive carefully and maintain a suitable distance from the vehicle in front.
- ► Avoid frequent, sudden acceleration and braking.

ENVIRONMENTAL NOTE Environmental pollution caused by irresponsible disposal of batteries

Batteries contain substances harmful to the environment.

- ► Please go to a smart Authorized Service Partner to dispose of damaged batteries.

Genuine smart parts

NOTE Damage to the operational performance of the safety system caused by accessories installation, repair or welding

Airbags and seat belt pretensioners, as well as control units and sensors for the safety system, may be installed in the following areas of your vehicle:

- Doors
- Door pillars
- Door sills
- Seats
- Headlamp brackets
- Cockpit
- Instrument cluster
- Centre console
- Lateral roof frame

► Never install accessories such as an audio system in these areas.

► Never carry out repairs or welding by yourself.

► Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for modification of accessories.

WARNING Risk of accidents due to using parts which have not been approved by smart

Using parts which have not been approved by smart may jeopardise the operating safety of the vehicle and safety-related systems, like the brake system, and malfunction may occur.

► Please use smart genuine parts and accessories.

For genuine parts and accessories (including conversion parts), their reliability, safety and suitability have been tested by smart.

smart shall bear no liability for the vehicle damage and personal injury caused by using non-genuine parts of smart, even if they have been officially or independently approved by a third party test centre.

Be sure to specify the vehicle identification number (VIN) when ordering smart genuine parts.

Operating safety

WARNING Risk of accident due to malfunctions or system failures

If you do not have the prescribed service/maintenance or any required repairs carried out, system malfunctions or failures could occur.

► It is recommended to have the prescribed service/maintenance work as well as any required repairs carried out at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to modification to electronic components

Modification to electronic components, their related software or wiring could impair their function and/or the operation of other associated electronic parts, particularly systems related to safety. They may no longer function as intended and endanger the operating safety of the vehicle.

► Never tamper with the wiring, electronic components or their software.

► It is recommended to have the work related to electronic components carried out at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

WARNING Risk due to illegal modifications

Illegal modifications impair vehicle handling, safety and longevity, and may cause the vehicle no longer to be street legal.

► Check out the local regulations before modification. **smart is not responsible for any consequence caused by illegal modifications**.

NOTE Damage to the vehicle

There is a risk of damage to the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- The vehicle body contacts the ground, such as a high kerb or when driving on an unpaved road.
- The vehicle is driven too fast over an obstacle, such as a kerb, speed bump or pothole.
- A heavy object strikes the underbody or chassis components.

In such situations, the body, the underbody, chassis components, high voltage battery, wheels or tyres could have suffered damages that are not visible. Components damaged in this way could fail unexpectedly or not function properly.

► Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection and repair immediately.

Electric vehicles are equipped with drive motors. The drive motor is powered by the high voltage system.

WARNING Risk of fatal injury from touching damaged high voltage components

The vehicle high voltage electrical system is under high voltage. If you modify components in the vehicle high voltage electrical system or touch damaged components, electric shock may occur.

Components in the vehicle high voltage electrical system may suffer damage in an accident, although the damage may not be visible.

► Never modify the high voltage electrical system.

► Never touch components in the high voltage electrical system (for example: orange wiring harness and its connected components).

► After an accident, do not touch any high voltage components.

► After an accident, have the high voltage electrical system checked at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

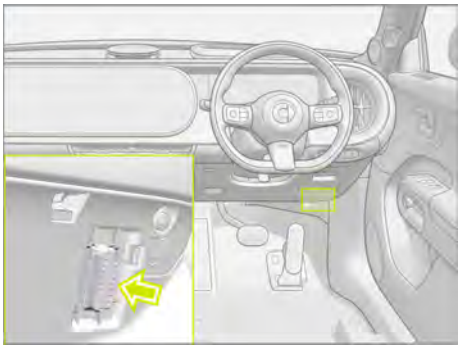
The components of the high voltage system are marked with yellow warning stickers. The cables of the high voltage system are orange.



Electric vehicles generate significantly less noise than gas-powered vehicles. As a result, your vehicle may not be noticed by pedestrians and other vehicles in certain situations. You are always responsible for safe driving.

OBD data link connector

The OBD data link connector is intended for the connection of diagnostic devices at a smart Authorized Service Partner.



WARNING Risk of accident due to connecting devices to the diagnostics connection

If you connect equipment not approved by smart to the diagnostics connection in the vehicle, it may affect the operation of vehicle systems. As a result, the operating safety of the vehicle could be affected.

► Only connect the vehicle's diagnostics connection to devices which are approved by smart.

WARNING Risk of accident due to objects in the driver's footwell

Objects in the driver's footwell may impede pedal travel or block a pressed pedal.

This jeopardises the operating and road safety of the vehicle.

► Stow all objects in the vehicle securely so that they cannot get into the driver's footwell.

► Always fix the floor mats securely in order to make sure that there is always sufficient room for the pedals.

► Never use loose floor mats, nor place a floor mat on another one.

smart Authorized Service Partner

smart Authorized Service Partners have the necessary special skills, tools and qualifications to correctly carry out the work required on the vehicle, especially for safety-related work.

smart recommends that you drive to a smart Authorized Service Partner for vehicle inspection and the following work:

- Safety-related work
- Maintenance
- Repair
- Modification and installation
- Electrical work

Vehicle registration

You can be informed about the vehicle inspections only if smart has your registration data.

In the following cases, your vehicle may not be registered to you yet:

- If your vehicle was not purchased through the official channel.
- If your vehicle has not yet been inspected at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Use smart APP or visit a smart Authorized Service Partner for information change.

Correct use of the vehicle

If you remove any warning stickers, you or others could fail to recognise certain dangers. Leave warning stickers in position.

Observe the following information particularly when driving your vehicle:

- Safety precautions in the User Manual
- Technical data of the vehicle
- Traffic rules and regulations
- Laws and safety standards pertaining to motor vehicles

Information on the REACH regulation

The REACH stands for the Regulation on the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals. It is part of the European Chemicals legislation. It entered into force in 2007, aimed at ensuring a high level of protection of human health and the environment. At the same time, it ensures the free circulation of chemicals on the internal market while enhancing competitiveness and innovation. The basic principle of REACH is that producers, importers, and downstream users assume responsibilities for their chemicals.

Particularly, smart supports Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33 that relates to Substances of Very High Concern (SVHC).

For further information, please visit the following website:

https://www.reach.smart.com

QR code for rescue card

The QR code is on the inner side of the charging port cover and on the driver side B-pillar. In the event of an accident or emergency, rescue services can use the QR codes to quickly find the appropriate rescue card of your vehicle. The current rescue card contains the most important information about your vehicle in a compact form, such as the routing of electric lines.

Declaration of Conformity

Electromagnetic compatibility

The electromagnetic compatibility of the vehicle components has been checked and certified according to the currently valid version of Regulation ECE R10.

Radio equipment in the vehicle

The following information is valid for all wireless components in the vehicle as well as the on-board integrated information system and communication devices:

This vehicle's wireless components meet the essential requirements and other relevant regulations stipulated in Directive 2014/53/EU and UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. For more information, please consult a smart Authorized Service Partner, or visit the website https://red.smart.com/home to view the full conformance statement.

Key PCBA

Xi'an Linksci Technol ogy Co., Ltd, 301, block A, main building, ZTE lndustrial Park, No.10, Tangyan South Road, Hitech Zone, Xi'an, Shanxi, China 710076

BNCM

Unitde Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd, No.555 Rongqiao Road, Pudong, 201206 Shanghai P.R. China

5G antenna

Taizhou Suzhou Antenna Group Co., Ltd, #1 Jiangping Rd. Taizhou, Jiangsu Province, P. R.C

TCAM

Dalian Neusoft Smart Go Ltd, No.901-9 Huangpu Road, Ganjingzi District, Dalian City, Liaoning Province, China

NFC

Hefei Invispower Co., Ltd, 2A, Yousi Tiancheng Industrial Park, No.1800, Dabieshan Road, Hiqh-tech Zone

Tyre pressure sensor

Schrader Electronics Ltd, 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, NorthernIreland

Radar - forward & rearward detection

Aptiv Service Deutschland GmbH, Am Technologiepark 1, 42119 Wuppertal, Germany

Radar - side obstacle detection

Aptiv Service Deutschland GmbH, Am Technologiepark 1, 42119 Wuppertal, Germany

Wireless charger

Changzhou Tenglong Auto Parts Co., Ltd., No.15, Tenglong Road, Economic Development Zone, Wujin District, Changzhou City, Jiangsu Province, China

FM2/DAB amplifier

Taizhou Suzhong Antenna Group Co., Ltd. No.1 East Jiangping Road, Gaogang District 225321, Taizhou, Jiangsu, China

Wireless applications

Item	Frequency range	Transmission output / magnetic field strength
Key PCBA	BLE: 2400–2483.5 MHZ UWB: 6–9 GHZ	3 dB
BNCM	BLE: 2400–2483.5 MHZ UWB: 6–9 GHZ	–1 dB
5G antenna	600–5000 MHz	≥ —5 dBi
NFC	13.56 MHz	–18.89 dBuA/m@10m
Tyre pressure sensor	433.92 MHz	89 ± 3 dB V/m
Radar – forward & rearward detection	76–77 GHZ	26 dBm
Radar – side obstacle detection	76 ~ 77 GHZ	≤ 29.37 dBm
Wireless charger	100–148.5 KHZ	10.92 dBuA/m@10m
FM2/DAB amplifier	FM: 87–108MHz DAB: 174–240MHz	FM: 4–8 dB DAB: 14±3 dB

Data Storage

Event data recorder

A smart vehicle is equipped with an EDR system that meets the national standards. The system is used to record the relevant information when a vehicle collision event occurs, such as vehicle speed (vehicle speed at the time of the event) and braking state (indicating whether the vehicle is braking at the time of the event).

The event data can help relevant personnel understand the state of the vehicle at the time of the event, so that relevant parties can act in accordance with relevant laws, regulations and provisions. In addition, this information can be used for engineering research, which helps smart Automobile improve product quality and safety.

According to the requirements of national legislation and regulations, smart Automobile may need to disclose relevant recorded data to authorities such as the police department or other institutions authorised to access the EDR system. Reading the EDR system data requires special reader equipment from smart Automobile. Only individuals or organizations with authorization can access the data of the EDR system. If necessary, you may consult a smart Authorized Service Partner and apply for this equipment with its help.

Vehicle data record

smart respects and is committed to protecting user's privacy. The information described in this manual is correct at the time of release. However, as technology has been developed continuously, we

recommend that you check out the latest information on smart's official website.

The vehicle is equipped with several storage devices to record specific data.

These storage devices do not record conversations or sounds. In some cases, they only record images outside the vehicle.

The data recorded may vary depending on the vehicle configuration. The recorded information normally includes vehicle conditions, maintenance requirements, events, malfunctions, etc.

The recorded information consists of, but is not limited to, the following data:

- System component states, such as battery SOC and tyre pressure.
- Vehicle status, such as vehicle speed, deceleration and lateral acceleration.
- Events and errors of essential systems, such as headlamps and brake.
- System responses to driving situations, such as airbag deployment and Electronic Stability Control.
- Environment conditions, such as ambient temperature.

Data usage

We may use the data recorded in these storage devices for fault diagnosis, research, development and quality improvement.

Only under special occasions, some of the data when used in combination with other information, such as an accident report, vehicle damage or eyewitness statement, could be associated with a specific person.

We may disclose the recorded data to a third party in the following cases:

- The owner or lessee (in case of a leased vehicle) agrees.
- A law enforcement agency, government authority or a third party with lawful authority request the data.
- The data is to be used by smart in a lawsuit.
- The data is to be used for research purposes. In this case, the data is not related to a particular vehicle or owner.

For more information, refer to the privacy policies through the centre display.

Online service

Wireless network connection

If your vehicle features the wireless network connection function, data can be exchanged between the vehicle and other equipment. The wireless network connection can be enabled through the transmission and reception units of the vehicle or by connection with mobile terminal equipment, such as a smart phone. Through wireless network connection, you can use online functions, including online services and applications provided by manufacturers or other service providers.

Services provided by the manufacturer

Regarding online services provided by the manufacturer, the individual functions are described by the manufacturer in a suitable place, such as the User Manual or website of the manufacturer, along with the relevant data protection information. Personal data can be used to provide online services. Data is exchanged via a secure connection, such as the manufacturer's designated IT systems. Collecting, processing and using personal data for provision of services are permitted only on the basis of a statutory permit or declaration of consent.

Services from third parties

If online services are available from third parties, these services are the responsibility of the service providers and subject to that provider's data protection policies and terms of use. The manufacturer has no influence over the data exchange in such cases.

For this reason, ask the service provider for information about the type, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data when services are provided by third parties.

Safety Systems

Overview of safety system

The vehicle is equipped with multiple safety systems, which cooperate with each other to provide protection for vehicle occupants in case of an accident. Based on the accident condition, such as impact angle, rollover or running off the road, the safety systems react differently to provide better protection.

Safety systems include the following components:

- Seat belts
- Airbags
- Child restraint system

To ensure that the safety systems can provide the intended level of protection, occupants in the vehicle must observe the following:

- Fasten seat belts correctly.
- Sit in an almost upright posture with the back against the seat backrest.
- Place feet on the floor.
- It is recommended that children under 12 years old or 1.50 m tall use suitable child restraint systems. Be sure to observe the local laws and regulations for the use of child restraint systems in the vehicle.

At present, no available safety system can completely eliminate injuries and fatalities in every accident situation. In particular, the seat belts and airbags generally do not protect occupants against objects penetrating the vehicle from the outside. It is also impossible to completely eliminate the risk of injury caused by airbag deployment.

WARNING Risk of injury or death from modifications to the safety system

The safety system can no longer function correctly after alterations have been made.

The safety system may not protect the vehicle occupants as intended. For example, it may trigger unexpectedly or not trigger at all in an accident.

- ► Never alter the parts of the safety system.
- ► Never tamper with the wiring, electronic components and their software.

Malfunctioning safety system

After the vehicle is powered on and the indicator lamp READY on the driver information display comes on, the safety system will perform the self-test. In this process, the airbag fault indicator lamp comes on. This indicator lamp goes out shortly after the vehicle is started.

A malfunction has occurred in the safety system if:

- After the vehicle is powered on and the indicator lamp READY on the driver information display comes on, the airbag fault indicator lamp does not come on.
- The airbag fault indicator lamp comes on continuously or repeatedly during driving.

If a malfunction has occurred in the safety system, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection and repair immediately.

Functions of safety system in an accident

Operation of safety systems depends on the detected collision strength and estimated accident type:

- Front collision
- Rear collision
- Side collision

Factors that can be seen and measured only after collision cannot be used as the conditions for triggering the airbags to deploy, nor as the indications of airbag deployment.

Sometimes, airbags may not deploy even though the vehicle is seriously deformed due to collision. For example, this situation may occur when a vehicle component prone to deformation is deformed and the deceleration is not high enough. On the contrary, the airbag may deploy even though the vehicle is only slightly deformed. For example, this situation may occur when a rigid component of the vehicle such as side member is impacted and the deceleration is high enough.

The components of safety systems may be triggered in case of collision, impact or deceleration, which depends on the impact strength, angle and speed, and impacted object.

Equipment	Triggering conditions
Driver's airbag Passenger's airbag	There is a front collision accident and the airbag meets the triggering conditions.
Front side airbag	A side collision or high-speed frontal oblique collision happens, and the airbag meets the triggering conditions.
Curtain airbag	A side collision or high-speed frontal oblique collision happens, and the airbag meets the triggering conditions.
Far side airbag	A side collision or high-speed frontal oblique collision happens, and the airbag meets the triggering conditions.

The passenger's airbag can be triggered in an accident only when it is enabled. If the front passenger seat is occupied, ensure that the front passenger airbag is enabled before driving.

WARNING Risk of burns from hot airbag components

The airbag components are hot when just deployed.

- ▶ Do not touch the airbag components.
- ▶ Have deployed airbags immediately replaced at a smart Authorized Service Partner as soon as possible.

If the seat belt pretensioner is triggered or an airbag deploys, you will hear a bang, and a small amount of powder may also be released.

- Generally, the bang will not affect your hearing.
- In general, the powder released is not hazardous to your health but may cause short-time breathing difficulties to persons suffering from asthma or other pulmonary conditions.
- Leave the vehicle immediately or open the windows to prevent breathing difficulties, provided it is safe to do so.

Seat Belts

Protection provided by the seat belt

Be sure to fasten the seat belts correctly before driving. A seat belt can only provide optimal protection when it is fastened correctly.

Be sure to observe the instructions on adjusting the driver's seat to the optimal position and adjusting the seat (→ Page 66).

WARNING Risk of injury or death due to incorrectly fastened seat belt

A seat belt that is not worn correctly does not provide the intended level of protection. For example, personal injury may occur during an accident, emergency braking or steering.

► Always make sure that all vehicle occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and sit properly.

To correctly wear the seat belt for the expected protection purpose, occupants must observe the following:

- The seat belt must not be twisted. It must be inserted into its buckle correctly and fit tightly and snugly across your body.
- The seat belt must be routed across the centre of the shoulder and as low down across the hips as possible. Never route the lap belt across your abdomen. Pregnant women shall pay special attention to this.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt shall not touch your neck nor be routed under your arm or behind your back.
- If not necessary, avoid wearing bulky clothing, such as a winter coat.
- Never route the seat belt across sharp, pointed, abrasive or fragile objects.
- Each seat belt shall only be used by one person each time. Never put a baby or child on the lap of another occupant.
- Never secure any objects with a seat belt. If you need to secure objects, please observe notes on loading the vehicle (→ Page 73).
- In addition, ensure that no object, such as cushion, is placed between the occupant and the seat.
- If there are children in the vehicle, please observe notes on traveling with children in the vehicle (→ Page 38).

Notes on the seat belt

Be sure to insert a seat belt tongue into its corresponding buckle, or the seat belt and the buckle may lose the intended functions, leading to severe injury in the event of a collision.

WARNING Risk of injury or death due to incorrect seating posture

Incorrect seating posture may cause the airbag not to provide the intended level of protection, and its deployment may lead to other injuries.

To avoid risks, vehicle occupants must observe the following:

► Fasten seat belts correctly. Pregnant women must take particular care with this. Never route the lap belt across your abdomen.

► Make sure no people, animals or objects are ever placed between the airbag and the vehicle occupant.

WARNING Risk of injury or death when child restraint systems are not used for occupants with a smaller build

Children under 12 years old or 1.50 meters tall are recommended to use a suitable child restraint system and wear the integrated seat belt correctly.

An integrated seat belt that is not worn correctly does not provide the intended level of protection. For example, personal injury may occur during an accident, emergency braking or steering.

► Always secure children under 12 years old or 1.50 meters tall in a suitable child restraint system and wear the integrated seat belt correctly.

WARNING Risk of injury or death due to damaged or modified seat belts

Seat belts cannot provide expected protection particularly in the following situations:

- The seat belt is damaged, modified, extremely dirty, bleached or dyed.
- The seat belt buckle is damaged or extremely dirty.
- Modifications have been made to the seat belt pretensioners, seat belt anchorages or seat belt retractors.
- Seat belts may sustain non-visible damage from glass splinters in an accident.

Modified or damaged seat belts could tear or fail in the event of an accident.

Modified seat belt pretensioners may be triggered unintentionally or not function as intended.

► Never modify the seat belts, seat belt pretensioners, seat belt anchorages or seat belt retractors.

► Make sure that the seat belts are free of damage, not worn, and clean.

► After an accident, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for safety system inspection and repair immediately.

WARNING Risk of injury or death due to triggered seat belt pretensioners

► Please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner immediately to replace the deployed seat belt assembly.

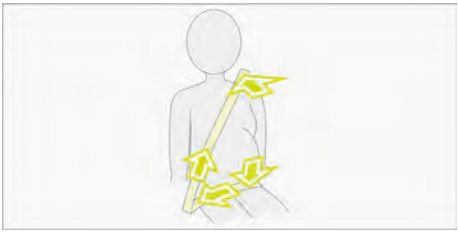
NOTE Damage caused by unused seat belts being trapped

If an unused seat belt is not fully retracted, it may become trapped in the door or in the seat mechanism.

► Always make sure that unused seat belts are fully retracted.

Pregnancy safety

It is particularly important for a pregnant woman to wear the seat belt correctly.



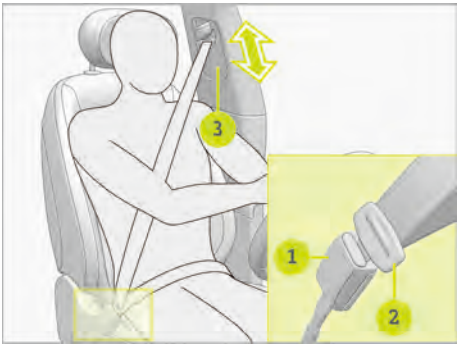
Before operating the vehicle, a pregnant woman shall confirm with a doctor if she could drive a vehicle. To lower the risk of injury to you and your foetus, adjust the seat to stay away from the steering wheel, as long as you can still operate it normally.

Pass the shoulder strap through the shoulder, middle of the chest and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap belt shall fit over the thighs and below the abdomen as much as possible. Do not raise the seat belt. Tighten the seat belt and make sure it fits the body closely. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

Fastening the seat belts

If the seat belt is pulled quickly or fiercely, the seat belt retractor will lock and you cannot pull out the seat belt further.



1. Always insert the seat belt tongue 2 into the seat belt buckle 1 of the corresponding seat.

Pull the seat belt to make sure it is fastened correctly after hearing a click.

2. Press and hold the button on the seat belt height adjustment device 3 and adjust the device to the desired position.
3. Release the button on the seat belt height adjustment device 3 and make sure the device 3 is locked in place.

The rear seat belts are not equipped with any height adjustment device. They can be fastened by the method described in step 1.

Releasing a seat belt

Press the red button on the seat belt buckle and hold the seat belt tongue to place the seat belt back in place.

Seat belt pretensioner

The front seat belts are equipped with pretensioners. In case of serious collision, the pretensioners will be triggered at the same time as the airbags. The pretensioners automatically tighten the seat belts, securing the occupants more effectively, thus reducing the forward inclination of the occupants.

The second-row outboard seat belts are equipped with pretensioners for tightening, thus reducing the forward inclination of the occupants.

If the pretensioners and airbags are not triggered during a collision, it does not mean that they are faulty. It could be that the intensity or the type of the collision does not meet the triggering conditions.

WARNING Potential risk of injury or death due to triggered seat belt pretensioners

Once a seat belt pretensioner is triggered, it must be replaced. After a collision, the airbags, seat belt pretensioners, and other related components may also be damaged. Please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection and repair.

Seat belt load limit

In case of serious collision, the webbing can be pulled out slowly after the seat belt is pre-tightened or locked, which can reduce the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the occupant's chest.

For vehicles equipped with adaptive seat belt load limiters, the seat belt can determine the switching time of the high and low load limits according to the seat position of the occupant. If it is determined that the occupant seat is in a front position, the low load limit can be switched on early to avoid excessive pressure on the occupant's chest. If it is determined that the occupant seat is in a rear position, the load limit will be switched on late.

Seat belt reminder

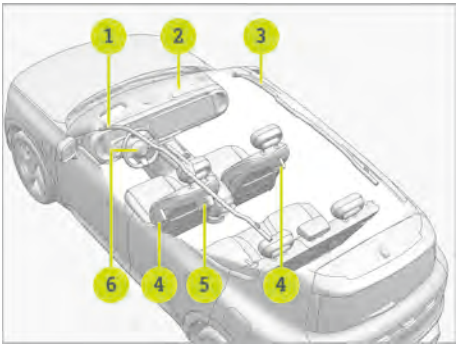
The vehicle is equipped with seat belt reminder. The seat belt reminder warning lamp on the driver information display can remind the driver that all occupants must wear their seat belts correctly. In addition, a warning tone may sound. At the same time, the driver information display will indicate the seat with the unfastened seat belt in the form of an image.

When the driver starts the vehicle, if the driver, front passenger and rear passengers do not wear their seat belts correctly, the driver seat belt reminder warning lamp  and the front passenger seat belt reminder warning lamp  and the rear passenger seat belt reminder warning lamp  will come on. When the vehicle speed exceeds about 25 km/h (16 mph) or after driving a certain distance forward, if the seat belt is still not fastened, the seat belt reminder warning lamp will flash, accompanied by a warning tone, until the seat belt is fastened.

If the vehicle is driving forward at higher than 25 km/h (16 mph) and the seat belt is unfastened, the seat belt reminder warning lamp will flash with a warning tone until the seat belt is fastened properly.

Airbags

Overview of the airbags



1 Left curtain airbag
2 Passenger's airbag
3 Right curtain airbag
4 Front side airbag
5 Far side airbag
6 Driver's airbag

The installation location of an airbag is indicated by the AIRBAG symbol.

An airbag may provide supplementary protection for the corresponding occupant.

Passenger airbag label

WARNING Risk of injury or death from deployed airbags

A deployed airbag no longer offers any protection and cannot provide the intended protective function in the event of an accident.

► Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner to have deployed airbags replaced.



The label is visible on the passenger side B pillar when the front passenger door is opened.



The passenger airbag label is located on the front passenger's sun visor.

Airbag warning notes

Each occupant must observe the following to prevent risks caused by airbag deployment:

- Adjust the seat correctly before driving. Try to move the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat backward as much as possible if appropriate.
  For this operation, please observe the relevant notes on adjusting the driver's seat to the optimal position (→ Page 66).
- Please hold the steering wheel correctly to allow the airbag to be deployed completely.
- Ensure that your back leans on the seat backrest during driving. Do not lean forward. Do not lean against the door or window. Otherwise, you may be in the airbag deployment area.
- Ensure that your feet are on the floor. For example, never put your feet on the

instrument panel. Otherwise, your feet may be in the airbag deployment area.

- If there are children in the vehicle, please observe notes on traveling with children in the vehicle (→ Page 38).
- Be sure to store and secure objects correctly and observe notes on loading the vehicle (→ Page 73).

Objects in the vehicle may hinder the normal operation of airbags. Each occupant must observe the following:

- There are no persons, animals or objects between the occupant and airbag.
- There are no objects between the seat, door and door pillar (B-pillar).
- There are no hard objects, such as coat hanger, on the handle or the coat hook.
- There are no movable navigation equipment, mobile phones, cup holders, etc. in the airbag deployment area of the vehicle (e.g., cab, door, window, side trim panel, etc.).
  In addition, never fix or route any connecting cables and straps in or in the airbag deployment area.
- The occupants' pocket shall be free from any heavy, sharp or fragile objects. Please place such objects at appropriate positions.

WARNING Risk of injury caused by modifying airbag covers

If airbag covers are modified or sticked with labels and other objects, the airbags may not be able to function normally.

► Never modify airbag covers or stick objects onto them.

WARNING Risk of injury or death caused by seat covers

Seat covers may hinder or prevent airbags from deploying, and as a result the airbags cannot provide the intended level of protection for occupants.

► Do not use seat covers on the first row seats.

WARNING Risk of injury caused by door pressure sensor failure

The doors have door pressure sensors to control airbags. Modifying or implementing incorrect operation on doors, door decoration boards and damaged doors may impair the sensor function. As a result, the airbags may not be able to function normally and provide the intended level of protection for occupants.

► Do not add or modify doors or door components by yourself.
► Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for the related work.

WARNING Risk of injury or death from deployed airbags

A deployed airbag no longer offers any protection and cannot provide the intended protective function in the event of an accident.

► Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner to have deployed airbags replaced.

Protection provided by the airbags

Depending on the accident situation, an airbag may supplement the protection offered by a correctly fastened seat belt.

WARNING Risk of injury or death due to incorrect seating posture

Incorrect seating posture may cause the airbag not to provide the intended level of protection, and its deployment may lead to other injuries.

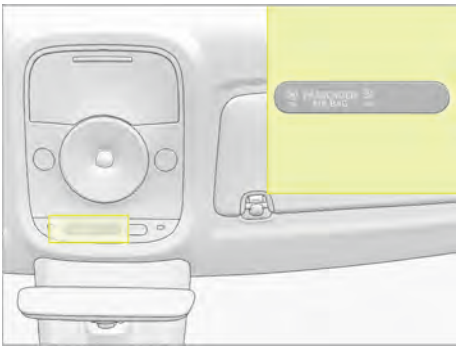
To avoid risks, vehicle occupants must observe the following:

► Fasten seat belts correctly. Pregnant women must take particular care with this. Never route the lap belt across your abdomen.
► Make sure no people, animals or objects are ever placed between the airbag and the vehicle occupant.

Potential protection by each airbag:

Airbags	Potential protection for the following parts
Driver's airbag, and front passenger's airbag	Head and chest
Curtain airbag	Head
Front side airbag	Chest
Far side airbag	Head and chest

State of the passenger airbag



Front passenger's airbag disabled: OFF

Front passenger's airbag enabled: ON

The front passenger's airbag can be deployed in an accident only if the passenger's airbag is enabled. If the front passenger seat is occupied, ensure that the front passenger airbag is enabled before driving.

WARNING Risk of injury or death if the passenger airbag is disabled

If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp comes on, it means that the passenger airbag is disabled and will not deploy in case of an accident, failing to provide necessary protection.

In this case, if the front passenger sits too close to the front, serious injury or death may occur.

If the front passenger seat is occupied, ensure:

- The passenger airbag is enabled or disabled in accordance with the adult/child type of the passenger in the front passenger seat.
- The passenger sits correctly.

► Ensure the passenger airbag is activated before driving.

WARNING Risk of injury or fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is enabled

The child on the front passenger seat may be struck by the airbag in the event of an accident if the front passenger airbag is enabled.

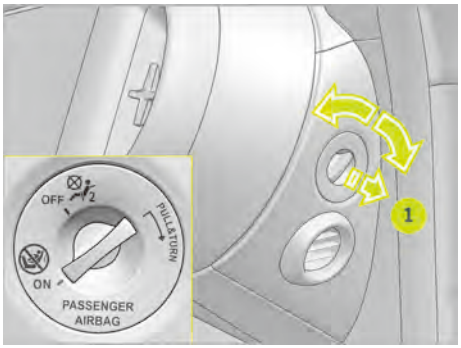
► Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it, death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Enabling and disabling the passenger airbag

The vehicle is equipped with a passenger airbag switch to disable the front passenger's airbag.

The passenger airbag switch is located on the passenger side of the instrument panel. It is accessible when the front passenger's door is opened.

Check if the switch is in the desired position.



To enable the front passenger's airbag:

Pull out the switch 1 in the arrowed direction and turn the switch counter-clockwise to enable the front passenger's airbag.

To disable the front passenger's airbag:

Pull out the switch 1 in the arrowed direction and turn the switch clockwise to disable the front passenger's airbag.

Traveling Safely with Children in the Vehicle

Notes on traveling with children in the vehicle

Please strictly observe the safety notes according to the specific situation. When there are children in the vehicle, you need to identify potential risks and avoid dangers (→ Page 38).

Be alert at all times

Bear in mind that when a child is not correctly secured in a child restraint system, serious consequences may occur. Always be alert and secure a child carefully before driving each time.

To enhance the protection for children under 12 years old or 1.5 meters tall, smart recommends that you observe the following:

- Be sure to secure the child in a child restraint system suitable for your vehicle.
- The child restraint system must be appropriate to the age, weight and size of the child.

Statistics show that it is usually safer to install the child restraint system in a second-row seat than in the front passenger's seat. It is recommended that you install the child restraint system in a second-row seat.

A child restraint system includes but is not limited to the following:

- A rear-facing child seat
- A forward-facing child seat
- A child booster seat with a backrest and seat belt guide

Please observe laws and regulations

Be sure to observe the local laws and regulations when using a child restraint system in the vehicle.

WARNING Notes on child restraint system

The contents of this manual are applicable to areas where there are no laws and regulations on the installation and use of a child restraint system.

- ▶ In addition to the installation instructions and operation manual, observe local laws and regulations for the installation and use of a child restraint system.
- ▶ In any area where laws and regulations have been made on the installation and use of a child restraint system, if any relevant content of this manual is inconsistent with the local laws and regulations, the local laws and regulations shall prevail.

Detecting risks and avoiding dangers

Securing systems for child restraint systems in the vehicle

Only use the following securing systems for the child restraint systems:

- ISOFIX/i-Size fixing point
- The vehicle's seat belt system
- TOP TETHER anchorages

When the child is secured using the safety belt integrated in the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system, observe the maximum

permissible weight and stature of the child and child restraint system together.

Advantages of rear-facing child restraint system

Toddlers or infants should preferably sit in a suitable rear-facing child restraint system, that is, they are seated in the opposite direction of travel and face backward.

As toddlers or infants have undeveloped neck muscles, a rear-facing child restraint system can reduce the risk of injury to the cervical spine in an accident.

Be sure to secure the child restraint system correctly

WARNING Risk of injury or death caused by incorrect installation of the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is incorrectly installed on a suitable seating position, it cannot perform its intended protective function.

The child cannot be restrained in the event of an accident, heavy braking or a sudden change of direction.

- ► Always observe the installation instructions and operation manual provided by the manufacturer for the child restraint system being used.
- ► Make sure that the entire base of the child restraint system always rests on the sitting surface of the seat.
- ► Never place objects, such as cushions, under or behind the child restraint system.

WARNING Risk of injury or death from unsecured child restraint systems in the vehicle

If the child restraint system is not correctly installed or secured, it could release in the event of an accident, sudden braking or a sudden change in direction.

The child restraint system could be tossed around and hit the occupants inside the vehicle.

- ► Always fit child restraint systems correctly, even when not in use.
- ► Always observe the installation instructions and operation manual provided by the manufacturer for the child restraint system being used.

- Observe the instructions on warning labels inside the vehicle and on the child restraint system.
- Attach the TOP TETHER.

Never alter the child restraint system

WARNING Risk of injury due to alterations to the child restraint system

The child restraint system may no longer function as it is supposed to if alterations are made or objects are attached to it, such as toys or unsuitable accessories. This poses an increased risk of injury!

- ► Never alter the child restraint system.

Only use child restraint systems which are not damaged

WARNING Risk of injury or death caused by the use of damaged child restraint systems

Child restraint systems or their retaining systems that have been subjected to a load in an accident may then not be able to perform their intended protective function.

The child may not be restrained in the event of an accident, heavy braking or a sudden change of direction.

- ► Always replace child restraint systems immediately that have been damaged or involved in an accident.
- ► Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner to have the retaining systems for the child restraint systems checked before installing a child restraint system again.

Avoid direct sunlight

WARNING Risk of burns when the child restraint system is exposed to direct sunlight

If the child restraint system is exposed to direct sunlight, components could heat up.

Children could suffer burns on these components, particularly on metallic parts of the child restraint system.

- ► Make sure that the child restraint system is not exposed to direct sunlight.
- ► If the child restraint system has been exposed to direct sunlight, allow it to cool before securing a child into it.
- ► Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Observe the following when stopping or parking the vehicle

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to children left unattended in the vehicle

If children are left unattended in the vehicle, they could in particular:

- Open doors, thereby endangering other persons or road users.
- Get out and be struck by oncoming traffic.
- Operate vehicle equipment and become trapped.

In addition, children could also set the vehicle in motion, by in particular:

- Releasing the parking brake
- Shifting the gear
- Starting the vehicle

- ► Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- ► When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.
- ► Keep the key out of the reach of children.

WARNING Risk of fatal injury due to exposure to extreme heat or cold in the vehicle

If people, particularly children, are exposed to extreme temperatures over an extended period of time, there is a risk of serious or even fatal injury!

- ► Never leave anyone, particularly children, unattended in the vehicle.
- ► Never leave animals in the vehicle unattended.

Suitability of the seats for attaching child restraint systems

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, be sure to observe the following:

- The front passenger's airbag must be disabled when you use a rear-facing child restraint system. Once the rear-

facing child restraint system is removed, please enable the front passenger's airbag immediately.

- If possible, adjust the front passenger's seat backrest vertically to ensure reliable contact between the backrest and the child restraint system.
- If the backrest of the child restraint system does not fit the shape of the seat during the installation of a child restraint system in the front passenger’s seat, try adjusting the seat position to properly fix the child restraint system in the front passenger’s seat.
- When installing with a seat belt, adjust the height of the front passenger seat as much as possible to ensure correct installation of the child restraint system.
- Adjust the height of the front passenger's seat belt to ensure the seat belt does not kink or bend over the edge of the guide device as it passes through the guide device.

Seating position

	Front right						
Seating position	**Front left**	**Front centre**	**With front passenger airbag activated**	**With front passenger airbag deactivated**	**2nd row left**	**2nd row centre**	**2nd row right**
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
I-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes Forward facing only	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing	No	No	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3

Seating position	Front left	Front centre	Front right		2nd row left	2nd row centre	2nd row right
			With front passenger airbag activated	With front passenger airbag deactivated			
fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)							
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	No	No	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	No	No	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3

ISOFIX child restraint system size envelope fixtures:

- ISO/F3: Full-height forward-facing toddler CRS
- ISO/F2: Reduced-height forward-facing toddler CRS
- ISO/F2X: Reduced-height forward-facing toddler CRS
- ISO/R3: Full-size rearward-facing toddler CRS
- ISO/R2: Reduced-size rearward-facing toddler CRS
- ISO/R2X: Reduced-size rearward-facing toddler CRS
- ISO/R1: Rearward-facing infant CRS
- ISO/L1: Left lateral-facing position CRS (carry-cot)
- ISO/L2: Right lateral-facing position CRS (carry-cot)

Notes on installing a child restraint system

WARNING Risk of injury due to second row seat cushion and seat backrest not being engaged correctly

If the second row seat cushion and backrest are not engaged correctly, they may fold forward, for example, when suddenly braking or encountering an accident.

- In this case, the vehicle occupant will be pushed into the seat belt by the second row seat cushion or backrest. Seat belts will not provide the best level of protection and may cause additional injuries.
- If the seat backrest is folded forward, the objects or loads in the boot could slip forward.

▶ Always make sure the second row seat cushion and backrest are engaged correctly before each journey.

When installing a child restraint system, observe the following particularly:

- Be sure to observe the correct use of the seats and consider their suitability for attaching a child restraint system.
- Be sure to observe the child restraint system manufacturer's installation instructions.
- Ensure the child's feet do not touch the front seat. If necessary, move the front seat forward slightly.

When installing an ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system, also observe the following:

- When using a rear-facing child restraint system on a second-row seat, adjust the front seat to prevent it from touching the child restraint system.
- If necessary, remove the head restraint from the corresponding seat when a forward-facing child restraint system interferes with the head restraint. In addition, the backrest of the child restraint system must be as close as possible to the seat backrest of the vehicle. After removing the child restraint system, install the head restraint immediately and adjust it correctly. Do not remove the head restraint when using a child booster cushion.
- The child restraint system must not touch the roof or face the wrong direction.
- The child restraint system must not be put under strain by the head restraint. If necessary, adjust the head restraint accordingly.

Installing an ISOFIX or an i-Size child restraint system

WARNING Risk of injury or death if the weight of the child exceeds the permissible gross mass

For ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint systems in which the child is secured using the seat belt integrated in the child restraint system, the weight of the child shall not exceed the permissible gross mass of the child restraint system.

If the child weighs more than the permissible gross mass, the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system with integrated seat belt does not offer sufficient protection. For example, too much load may be exerted on the anchorages of the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system and the child may not be restrained correctly in the event of an accident.

▶ If the child weighs more than the permissible gross mass, the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system and the seat belt must be used together.

▶ In addition, secure the child restraint system with the TOP TETHER.

Be sure to observe the following instructions on child restraint systems regarding the child's weight:

- Installation and operation manual of the child restraint system provided by the manufacturer.
- Label on the child restraint system.

Regularly check the weight of the child and ensure it still meets the permissible

gross weight requirement of the child restraint system.



Before driving each time, ensure that the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system is engaged correctly in both anchor points on the seat.

NOTE When installing a child restraint system, be careful not to damage the seat belt.

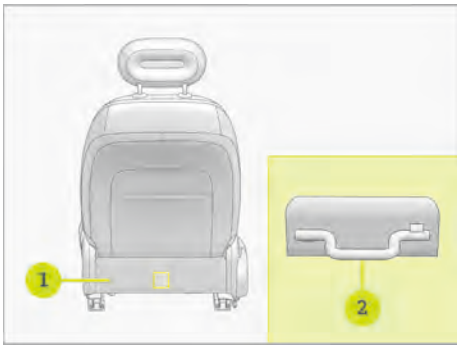
► Make sure the seat belt is not caught.

Attaching TOP TETHER to the front passenger seat



ISOFIX/i-Size label is located on the front passenger seat's rear curtain.

Installing the child restraint system



1. If necessary, remove or slide the head restraint upward and move the seat backward.
2. Install the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system with the TOP TETHER. For this operation, please observe the installation instructions for the child restraint system provided by the manufacturer.
3. Route the TOP TETHER through the space between the two head restraint bars under the head restraint.
4. Release the seat's rear curtain strap, and lift the rear curtain 1 upward to gain access to the anchorage 2 of the child restraint system.
5. Attach the hook of the TOP TETHER to the anchorage 2. Be careful not to twist it.
6. Pull the TOP TETHER tightly. For this operation, please observe the installation instructions for the child restraint system provided by the manufacturer.

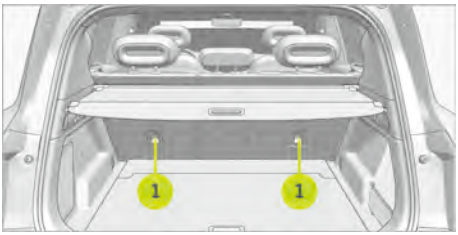
Attaching Top Tether to a second-row seat

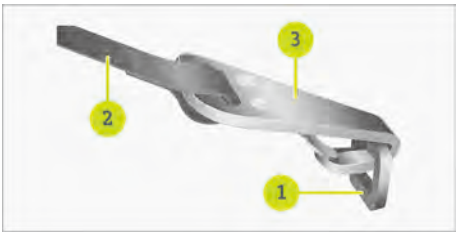
WARNING Risk of injury or death if the second row seat backrest is not locked after the TOP TETHER belt is installed

If the second row seat backrests are not locked, they may fold forward in case of an accident, emergency brake or sudden steering, resulting in the failure of the child restraint system to provide the intended protection. The unlocked second row seat backrests may also cause other injuries in an accident.

► After installing the TOP TETHER belt, lock the second row seat backrests.

The risk of injury can be reduced by TOP TETHER. The TOP TETHER belt allows an additional connection between the child restraint system attached with ISOFIX/i-Size seat and the vehicle.





1. If necessary, remove or pull up the head restraint.
2. Install the ISOFIX/i-Size child restraint system with the TOP TETHER. For this operation, please observe the installation instructions for the child restraint system provided by the manufacturer.
3. Guide the TOP TETHER belt through the space between the two head restraint bars under the head restraint.
4. Pass the TOP TETHER belt between the boot cover and the seat backrest.
5. Attach the hook 3 of the TOP TETHER belt to the anchorage 1. Be careful not to twist the belt.
6. Pull the TOP TETHER belt 2 tightly. For this operation, please observe the installation instructions for the child restraint system provided by the manufacturer.

Installing the seat belt-secured child restraint system

Be sure to observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Observe the following general guidelines for seat belt-secured child restraint systems:

- Make sure that the child restraint system is suitable for the child's weight, height and age.
- Avoid dressing the child with bulky clothes.
- Never place objects between the child and the child restraint system.
- Adjust the seat belt of the child restraint system for each child accordingly before every travel.

1. Place the child restraint system on a suitable seat and pull out the seat belt completely. Tighten and fasten the seat belt according to the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
2. Guide the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the seat belt tongue into the buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Secure the seat belt firmly to the child restraint system according to the instructions for the child restraint system.
3. If the child restraint system is not equipped with a seat belt securing device, please purchase a locking clip to secure the seat belt in place.
4. Shake the child restraint system back and forth to make sure the child restraint system is firmly installed.

Notes on installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat

Notes on rear-facing and forward-facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat

WARNING Risk of injury or death if a rear-facing child restraint system is used while the passenger airbag is enabled

If you secure a child in a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat and the passenger airbag is enabled, the passenger airbag can be deployed in the event of an accident and impact the child.

- ▶ Make sure the passenger airbag is disabled. The PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light must be on.
- ▶ Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on a seat protected with a front airbag (enabled). Otherwise, death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Be sure to pay attention to the status of the passenger airbag through the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator light.

- If a child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat, be sure to observe the notes on enabling/disabling the passenger airbag.
- When using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must always be disabled.
- If the PASSENGER AIRBAG ON indicator light is on, the front passenger airbag is enabled. The front passenger airbag may be deployed during an accident.
- When installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat to the highest position.

Child locks

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to children left unattended in the vehicle

If children are left unattended in the vehicle, they could in particular:

- Open doors, thereby endangering other persons or road users.
- Get out and be struck by oncoming traffic.
- Operate vehicle equipment and become trapped.

In addition, children could also set the vehicle in motion, by in particular:

- Releasing the parking brake
- Shifting the gear
- Starting the vehicle

- ▶ Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- ▶ When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Keep the key out of the reach of children.

A child lock can prevent the rear door from being opened from the inside and prevent the rear window lifter from being operated.

Enabling/disabling the child lock

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Quick Controls* > *Child Locks* > *Left rear door/Right rear door/Left rear window/Right rear window* to turn on/off the left rear or right rear child lock.
- Tap *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Child Lock* > *Left Rear Door Lock/Right Rear Door Lock/Left Rear Window Lock/Right Rear Window Lock* to enable/disable the left or right rear child lock.

Traveling Safely with Pets in the Vehicle

Notes on pets in the vehicle

If there are pets in the vehicle, please observe the notes on pets in the vehicle.

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to animals left unsecured or unattended in the vehicle

If you leave animals in the vehicle unattended or unsecured, they could possibly press down buttons or switches.

Thereby an animal may:

- Activate vehicle equipment and become trapped
- Switch systems on or off and endanger other road users.

► Never leave animals in the vehicle unattended.

► Always correctly secure animals while driving, for example using a suitable animal carrier.

In-car life detection

Overview of the in-car life detection system

After the vehicle is powered off, the life detection sensor starts to detect all passenger spaces (including the front passenger seat and rear seats). When living beings (such as children and pets) are detected, the driver will be reminded through alarms or intervention measures not to leave living beings in the vehicle, avoiding suffocation or high temperature injury of living beings left in the vehicle for a long time.

In-car life detection reminder

When living beings (such as children and pets) in the vehicle are detected, the driver will be reminded through alarms or intervention measures:

- After the vehicle is powered off and locked, if a living being is detected inside the vehicle, the driver will be reminded through audible and visual alarms and mobile phone messages and the Climate Control will be turned on and set to Auto mode.
- When there are passengers in the vehicle and no effective measures are taken a period of time after the vehicle is locked, the driver will be reminded through enhanced audible and visual alarms and mobile phone messages. If the driver does not respond, the driver will be reminded through mobile phone messages after some time. If the driver still does not respond and the inside temperature reaches 35°C, the windows will be lowered to reduce the injury of the passengers caused by high temperature and suffocation, and the driver will be reminded through mobile phone message alarms.
- During the alarm period, if any door is opened, the alarm will stop; when four doors are closed, the vehicle will start detection again.
- When the in-car life detection system is turned off, the OFF icon of the in-car life detection indicator lamp will be on on the driver information display, and the centre display will show a text prompt.

When the Parking Comfort mode or Pet mode is turned on, the in-car life detection function will be suppressed. When the Parking Comfort mode/Pet mode ends, the function will resume normal alarms when alarm conditions are met.

The system may be affected or inoperative under the following circumstances:

- The sensor area is covered by other objects.
- There are objects with a strong reflective effect on electromagnetic waves in the cabin, such as large metal objects.
- The detection target is outside the detection area, such as footwells and boot.
- The chest of the detection target is blocked by objects that cannot be

penetrated by electromagnetic waves, such as metal/gold-plated objects.

- Other situations where electromagnetic wave echoes cannot be received.
- Small pets or cold-blooded animals with slow breathing rates, such as mice and snakes.

The system may be triggered by mistake in the following situations:

- Electric toys with motion functions are turned on in the locked vehicle.
- Pendants or other objects are swinging in the locked vehicle.

Turning on/off the in-car life detection system

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display, tap **Life Detection** to turn on the in-car life detection system, and press and hold to turn off the in-car life detection system. When the in-car life detection system is turned off, the driver information display will show a text prompt.

  If the in-car life detection switch is turned off, it will be automatically turned on when the next trip starts.

Keys

Overview of the key functions

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to children left unattended in the vehicle

If children are left unattended in the vehicle, they could in particular:

- Open doors, thereby endangering other persons or road users.
- Get out and be struck by oncoming traffic.
- Operate vehicle equipment and become trapped.

In addition, children could also set the vehicle in motion, by in particular:

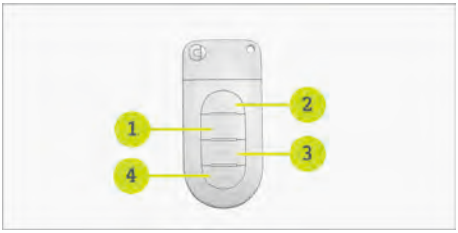
- Releasing the parking brake
- Shifting the gear
- Starting the vehicle

► Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

► When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.

► Keep the key out of the reach of children.

Keyfob



1 Press and release the button to lock the vehicle, then the inidicator lights flash. Press and hold the button, then the four windows and sunroof sunshade automatically close.

2 Press and release the button to unlock the vehicle, then the turn signal lamps flash. Press and hold the button, then the four windows automatically open.

3 Press and hold the button to open the bonnet.

4 Press and hold the button to open/close the liftgate.

smart #5 adopts a new remote control key solution of smart, using UWB positioning technology with high interference resistance, high transmission rate, high reliability, etc.

Due to the UWB positioning characteristics and keyfob size limitations, the power consumption of the keyfob is relatively high. Under normal vehicle use conditions (using the vehicle 3 times a day, driving for about 1 hour each time), the battery life is about 5–6 months. If the vehicle use is less frequent, the battery life will be extended accordingly. Otherwise, the battery life will be shortened. The battery life depends on the specific use scenario.

When the battery of the keyfob is low, if you try to start the vehicle, a "Keyfob battery low" prompt message will pop up on the driver information display. Please replace the battery as soon as possible.

The keyfob can lock and unlock the following components:

- Doors
- Liftgate
- Bonnet (unlock only)

Do not place the keyfob together with any electronic equipment or metal objects. Otherwise, the performance of the keyfob may be affected.

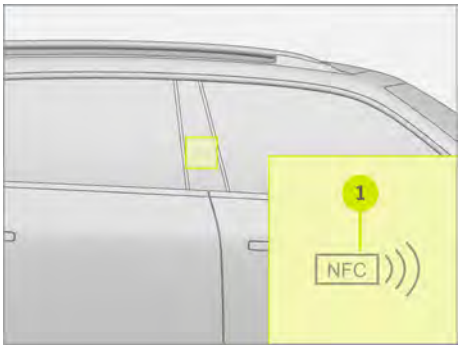
NOTE Strong magnetic fields can damage the keyfob

► Keep the keyfob away from strong magnetic fields.

If the keyfob is locked in the vehicle, this key will be disabled for safety reasons till the next time a legal key unlocks the vehicle.

NFC key

NFC key is easy to carry and use. You can use the NFC key to unlock and lock the vehicle.



Unlock: When the vehicle is locked, place the NFC key in the NFC key sensing area 1 to unlock the vehicle. If you keep placing the NFC key in the sensing area 1, the four windows will automatically open after the vehicle is unlocked.

Lock: When the vehicle is unlocked and all doors are closed, place the NFC key in the NFC key sensing area 1 to lock the vehicle. If you keep placing the NFC key in the sensing area 1, the four windows and sunroof sunshade will automatically close after the vehicle is locked.

If the NFC key is damaged or lost, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

NOTE Risk of damage caused by improper use of NFC card key

When using the NFC card key, please follow the instructions below. Otherwise, the NFC card key may be damaged or invalid.

- Do not bend, twist or cut the NFC card key.
- Do not place the NFC card key in a hot or humid place.
- When using the mobile phone wireless charging function, do not place the NFC card key in the wireless charging induction area.
- Do not use a mobile phone, metal card or similar card (such as bank cards, transit cards, ID cards or various access control cards) together with the NFC card key (by overlapping, swiping at the same time, etc.).

smart APP Bluetooth® key (if equipped)

You can register a Bluetooth key on smart APP and then unlock/lock the vehicle with the mobile phone.

When you approach the vehicle with your mobile phone, the vehicle detects the Bluetooth signal of the mobile phone. You can now unlock/lock the vehicle with the Bluetooth key on smart APP.

Pay attention to the following when using the Bluetooth key on smart APP:

- Open smart APP and enable Bluetooth.
- The performance of Bluetooth connection depends on the intensity of the Bluetooth signal of your mobile phone, and is easily affected by environmental factors such as strong magnetic field, object occlusion, traffic flow, rain and snow.
- Liquid media are highly impermeable to Bluetooth signals. Avoid liquid media as much as possible when using the Bluetooth key on smart APP.
- If the phone is placed in areas blocked by your body, for example, your rear pocket, the inner pocket of your top, etc, as the Bluetooth signal is weak, the

Approach to Unlock and Keyless Unlock functions may fail. You need to take out the phone to restore the functions.

- When you walk around the vehicle, the Bluetooth signal may be blocked by your body, which will trigger the Walk Away to Lock function. After the Bluetooth signal is restored, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked.
- If you dangle the phone close to the door, as the Bluetooth signal is weak, the Keyless Unlock function may fail. The Keyless Unlock function can be restored after the mobile phone is lifted.
- If you turn around to face the vehicle more than 10 seconds after the Walk Away to Lock function works, the Approach to Unlock function may be triggered.
- If there is a base station with an antenna around the parking lot or near the vehicle, the sensing distance of the Approach to Unlock and Walk Away to Lock functions will become farther.
- After the mobile phone is connected for more than 15 minutes, the vehicle stops positioning the mobile phone and the Approach to Unlock function cannot be used.
- When you hold the mobile phone and stand in the critical area (at the maximum distance for triggering the Walk Away to Lock/Approach to Unlock functions) facing the direction of the vehicle, the Walk Away to Lock and Approach to Unlock functions may be triggered alternatively, which is a normal phenomenon.
- After connection via Bluetooth, some mobile phones may not be able to unlock/lock and start the vehicle due to signal issues. It is recommended that you carry a keyfob or NFC key.
- The Bluetooth key on smart APP has an anti-play mechanism. After the Walk Away to Lock function is executed successively using the Bluetooth key on smart APP, the time interval for the execution of the Approach to Unlock function needs to be more than 10 seconds. Otherwise, the operation may fail.
- After the Approach to Unlock function is executed with the Bluetooth key on smart APP, if the door is not opened, the Approach to Unlock function will not be triggered again. At this time, the vehicle can only be unlocked by touching the door handle, and the sensing distance of the Walk Away to Lock function will become farther.
- The trigger interval of courtesy lights is 60 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked again within 60 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the courtesy lights will not come on again.
- When you connect smart APP near the vehicle, the Approach to Unlock function may be unavailable.
- If the Bluetooth positioning of the mobile phone is not accurate, causing inaccurate mobile phone location, the Bluetooth key on the smart APP may not be available.
- After all doors are closed, if the signal of the Bluetooth key on smart APP is located inside the vehicle for more than 15 seconds, the vehicle will judge that the key is inside the vehicle. At this time, the key will not be able to trigger the Approach to Unlock and Walk Away to Lock functions. The restrictions on the Bluetooth key need to be cleared by opening and closing the door once.

ⓘ Due to limitations of mobile hardware and operating systems, some mobile devices may not support the Bluetooth key function. For details, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Key sharing (if equipped)

The owner can share the key with others through smart APP.

Vehicle re-lock

If no door is open after the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle will automatically relock after a while. The anti-theft protection system will be activated again.

Find My Car

When you forget where the vehicle is parked, press and release the Lock button on the keyfob twice to use Find My Car, so the vehicle lights will flash and the horn will sound.

Setting the Find My Car prompt option

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap *Vehicle Settings*- > *Vehicle Control*- > *Vehicle Finding Alarm*, and then select between **Flashing Light + Honk** / **Flashing Light Only**.

Enabling/disabling the lock tone

When the lock tone is enabled, the vehicle will give a chime during vehicle locking to confirm that the vehicle is locked.

Enabling/disabling the lock tone

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap *Vehicle Settings*- > *Vehicle Control*- > *Locking Reminder Tone* to enable/disable the locking reminder tone.

Enabling/disabling the Double Click Unlock

When the Double Click Unlock is enabled, press the unlock button on the keyfob to unlock the driver's door, and press it again to unlock all doors.

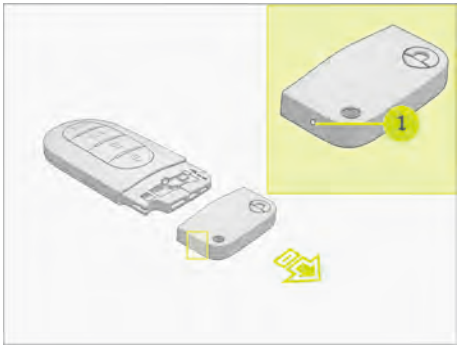
Enabling/Disabling the Double Click Unlock

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap *Vehicle Settings*- > *Vehicle Control*- > *Unlock Settings*- > *Two-step Unlock* to enable/disable two-step unlock.

Removing and installing the mechanical key

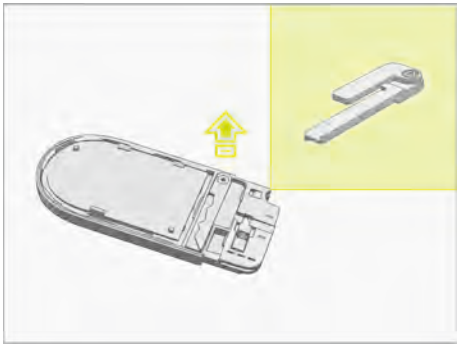
Removing the mechanical key



1. Press a suitable tool into the hole 1 and remove the keyfob cover in the arrowed direction.



2. Pry open the keyfob case 2 in the arrowed position using a suitable tool.



3. Take out the mechanical key in the arrowed direction.

Installing the mechanical key

Install the mechanical key in its original position, and put on the keyfob case and cover.

Replacing the keyfob battery

WARNING Serious damage to health caused by swallowing batteries

Batteries contain toxic and corrosive substances. Swallowing batteries may cause serious damage to health and risk of fatal injury.

- ► Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- ► If batteries are swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.

ENVIRONMENTAL NOTE Environmental damage from improper disposal of batteries



Batteries contain pollutants. Do not discard batteries with the household rubbish.

- ►  Dispose of batteries in an environmentally responsible manner. Take discharged batteries to a smart Authorized Service Partner or a used battery recycling point.

Requirements for battery:

- A 3V CR 2450 button cell is required.

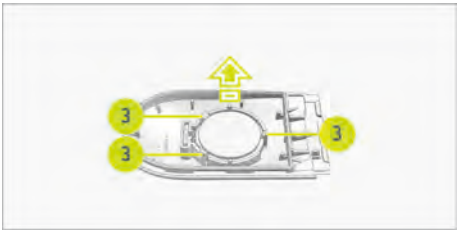
Replacing the keyfob battery:



1. Press a suitable tool into the hole 1 and remove the keyfob cover in the arrowed direction.



2. Pry open the keyfob case 2 in the arrowed position using a suitable tool.



3. Press the clip 3 lightly outward and remove the keyfob battery in the arrowed direction.
4. Install the new battery into the battery compartment and put on the keyfob case and cover.

Problems with keys

Locking/unlocking failure

Possible causes:

- The NFC card key is damaged or invalid.
- The keyfob battery is low or exhausted.
- The keyfob is malfunctioning.

- When the keyfob is kept close to electronic equipment such as mobile phone and laptop, it may fail. When the keyfob leaves the interference source, its function can be recovered.
- There is a strong radio interference source.
  - The vehicle is near a radio tower/TV tower or power station.
  - There are radio devices around the vehicle, such as transmitters or radio broadcasting devices.
- Improper operations on the keyfob.
  - The function will be disabled after the keyfob is operated consecutively 10 times to lock or unlock the vehicle within 20 seconds, and then will automatically resume if the keyfob is operated consecutively less than 5 times in the next 20 seconds.

In case of losing the NFC card key, keyfob or mechanical key

- Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

In case of losing your mobile phone with a registered Bluetooth key

Once your phone is lost, immediately log in to smart App on another mobile phone and delete the lost Bluetooth key. If the deletion undergoes repeated failures, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner immediately.

Doors

Unlocking/opening the doors from inside



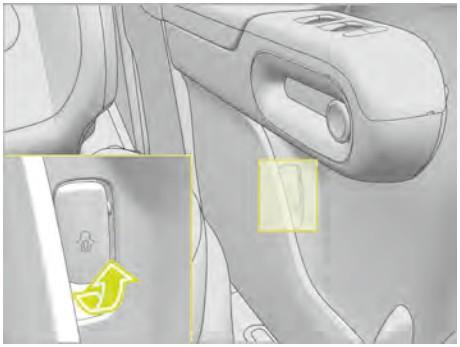
Press the door switch to open the door.

When the vehicle starts to run, the door switch is automatically disabled. Please pay attention to driving safety.

After the vehicle is locked using the keyfob, NFC key, smart APP or Keyless Entry function, the door switch will be disabled.

The doors have anti-play protection. After a door is opened 10 times within 20 seconds, the electric release anti-play protection will be enabled, and the door opening function will be restored after 90 seconds.

Emergency door handle

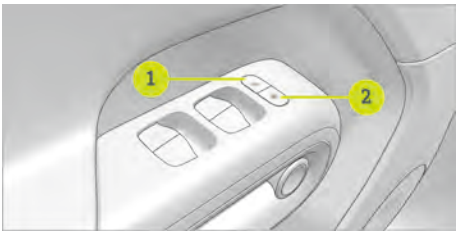


When the door cannot be unlocked by pressing the door switch, please try to pull the emergency handle in the door storage area to open the door.

NOTE

- ► For your driving/riding safety, do not use the emergency handle to open the door while the vehicle is in motion.
- ► Once the child safety lock is activated, the corresponding rear door can only be opened from the outside after being unlocked.
- ► In an emergency, it is recommended to break the window to escape.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the central lock



Unlock: Press the button 1.

Lock: Press the button 2.

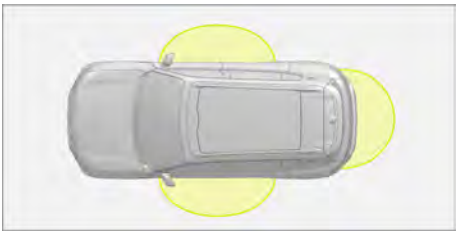
If the vehicle is locked by the methods described below, the vehicle cannot be unlocked by the above operation:

- Using a keyfob, NFC key or the smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped).
- Using keyless locking function.

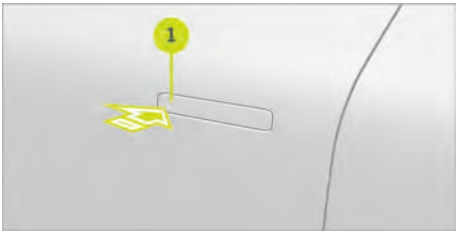
Alternatively, unlock/lock the vehicle with the central locking control keys / on the centre display.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with Keyless Entry

Enabling conditions



- The key is outside the vehicle.
- The key is within about 1.5 m from either of the two front doors or within about 1 m from the liftgate.



Unlocking:

Carry the keyfob/Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP and touch the sensing area 1 on the front door handle. When the door handles pop out, the vehicle is unlocked.

Locking:

When all doors and the liftgate are closed, carry the key and touch the sensing area 1 on the door handle. When the door handles retract, the vehicle is locked.

If the door handle is in anti-play state (that is, the door handle will be disabled for 180 seconds if it unfolds/retracts 10 times within 60 seconds), it will not act.

Touch to Unlock setting

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Unlock Setting* > *Touch to Unlock* and set to **Single Door** or **All Doors**.

Approach to Unlock/Walk Away to Lock

After this function is enabled, the vehicle will automatically unlock or lock when it detects that the keyfob/Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP enters or leaves the sensing range.

Approach to Unlock

When the vehicle is in locked state, carry the keyfob/Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP and get close to the vehicle, then the door handle will pop out and the vehicle will be unlocked automatically.

The keyfob is easily interfered with by electronic devices such as mobile phones and power banks, as well as external magnetic fields. In case of interference described above, the Approach to Unlock function will fail. At this time, you can unlock the door by touching the door handle or using the key.

After locking the vehicle, if you stay around the vehicle carrying the keyfob for more than 15 minutes, the Approach to Unlock function will be disabled till the door is opened next time.

When you approach the vehicle from a distance carrying the keyfob, if you stay near the vehicle for more than 3 minutes, the Approach to Unlock function will be disabled till the door is opened next time.

Activating the Approach to Unlock: The function will be activated 10 seconds after you walk away from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.

Walk Away to Lock

When the doors and liftgate are closed, carry the keyfob/Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP and walk away from the vehicle, then the door handle will retract and the vehicle will be locked automatically.

The keyfob is easily interfered with by electronic devices such as mobile phones and power banks, as well as external magnetic fields. Please confirm whether the vehicle is locked when you use the Walk Away to Lock function.

The keyfob is easily affected by the surrounding environment of the vehicle. For example, when there is a substation or charging station around the vehicle, the field strength generated in the environment will interfere with the keyfob. Please confirm whether the vehicle is locked when you use the Walk Away to Lock function.

Enabling/disabling the Approach to Unlock/Walk Away to Lock

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Unlock Setting* > *Approach to Unlock/Walk Away to Lock* to turn on/off the Approach to Unlock/Walk Away to Lock function.

The sensing distance of the Approach to Unlock/Walk Away to Lock function can be fine-tuned on smart APP.

When the vehicle is not successfully unlocked or locked using the Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP, please confirm whether smart APP is connected via Bluetooth.

If the vehicle lock or unlock function is triggered twice within 45 seconds using the keyfob, the Approach to Unlock function will not be triggered.

Make sure that your vehicle is locked to prevent the vehicle from not being locked automatically after you leave the vehicle due to external strong magnetic field interference and other factors.

Even though the Walk Away to Lock function is enabled, it is ultimately your responsibility to ensure the vehicle is locked.

Automatic lock on drive

When the vehicle speed increases to 7 km/h (5 mph), the vehicle will be locked automatically.

Auto Unlock in Emergency

When the vehicle suffers a collision to a certain extent, the doors will unlock automatically to facilitate the occupants to escape and emergency responders to perform rescue.

Auto Unlock in P gear

After the function is enabled, when the vehicle is stopped and shifted into P gear, the doors and liftgate will be unlocked automatically.

Turning on/off the Auto Unlock in P gear

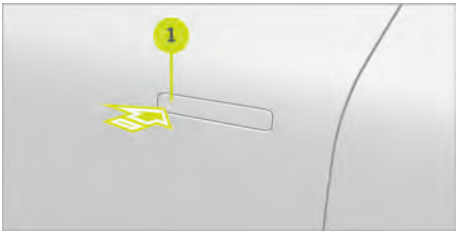
Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap *Vehicle Settings*- > *Vehicle Control*- > *Automatic Unlocking in Gear P* to enable/disable automatic unlocking in gear P.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the mechanical key

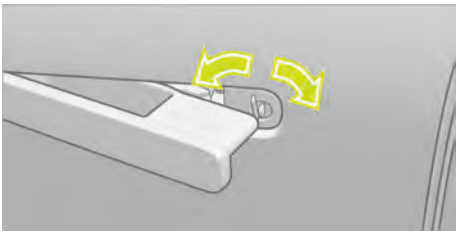
Unlocking/locking the driver's door

1. Take out the mechanical key (→ Page 52).



2. Press the front area 1 of the door handle, and pull the door handle outward.

   If the handle cannot be pulled out, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.



3. **Unlock the door:** Insert the mechanical key into the key hole until it stops, turn the mechanical key in clockwise direction, then release the key, release the door handle, and pull the door handle again to open the door.

Lock the door: Close the door, turn the mechanical key in anticlockwise direction, then take out the key, and release the door handle.

Double Lock (if equipped)

Overview of Double Lock

Once Double Lock is enabled, the doors cannot be opened from inside.

Using the Double Lock

The door can be locked with the keyfob, NFC key, or smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped). After about 10 seconds, Double Lock will be enabled.

If a door is open before Double Lock is enabled, the activation of Double Lock will be interrupted.

During the activation/deactivation of Double Lock, the hazard warning lights keep flashing.

Enabling/disabling the Double Lock

Double Lock is turned on by default and can be temporarily turned off via the settings.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Temporarily Remove Alert*, and turn on Temporarily Remove Alert to temporarily turn off the Double Lock.

Liftgate

Opening the liftgate

NOTE Damage of liftgate due to obstacles above the vehicle

The liftgate swings backward and upward when it is opened.

► Make sure that there is sufficient space behind and above the liftgate.

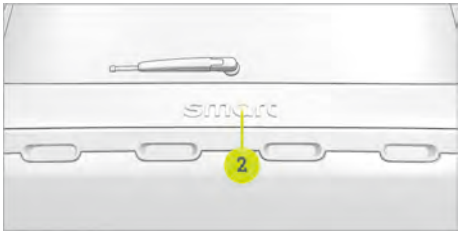
You can open the liftgate by the following methods:



- Press and hold the button on the keyfob.
- Press and hold the button 1 on the combination switch of the driver side instrument panel.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Quick Controls* > .
- After connecting smart APP to the vehicle through Bluetooth, press the

liftgate control button of the Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP.

- Vehicles equipped with kick-to-open liftgate: Carry the keyfob/smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped) and kick under the lower right section of the rear bumper.



- When the vehicle is in locked state, carry the keyfob/smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped) and press the button 2 on the liftgate.
- When the vehicle is in unlocked state, press the button 2 on the liftgate directly.

During the opening or closing process, the power liftgate will stop moving if people or obstacles blocking its movement. Ensure the area around the power liftgate is clear of people and obstacles when opening and closing the liftgate.

Closing the liftgate

WARNING Risk of injury from unsecured items in the vehicle

If objects are not secured or not secured sufficiently, they could slip, tip over or be flung around and thereby hit vehicle occupants.

There is a risk of injury, particularly in the event of sudden braking or a sudden change in direction.

► Always stow objects in such a way that they cannot be flung around.

► Before the journey, secure objects against slipping or tipping over.

WARNING Risk of being trapped during auto closing of liftgate

During the auto closing of the liftgate, parts of people's body may be trapped. For example, children may be standing in or entering the closing area.

► Ensure that nobody is near the closing area during the closing process.

► Stop closing the liftgate by any of the following methods:

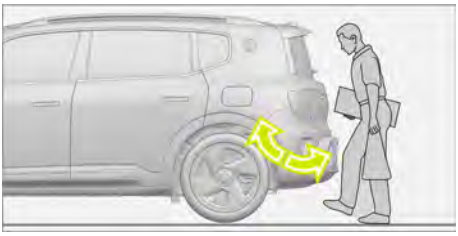
- Press the button on the keyfob.
- Press the button on the instrument panel combination switch on the driver side.
- Press the liftgate closing button on the liftgate trim panel or the external liftgate opening button.
- After connecting smart APP to the vehicle through Bluetooth, press the liftgate control button of the Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP.
- Vehicles equipped with kick-to-open liftgate: Carry the keyfob/smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped) and kick under the lower right section of the rear bumper.

You can close the liftgate by the following methods:

- Press and hold the button on the keyfob.
- Press and hold the button on the combination switch of the driver side instrument panel.
- For vehicles with a power liftgate button, press the button on the liftgate.
- After connecting smart APP to the vehicle through Bluetooth, press the liftgate control button of the Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Quick Controls* > .

- Vehicles equipped with kick-to-close liftgate: Carry the keyfob/smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped) and kick under the lower right section of the rear bumper.

Kick-sensing power liftgate (if equipped)



When the vehicle detects the keyfob or the Bluetooth key (if equipped) on smart APP, you can open or close the liftgate or stop its movement by kicking under the lower right section of the rear bumper.

The kicking motion alternately triggers the opening and closing processes.

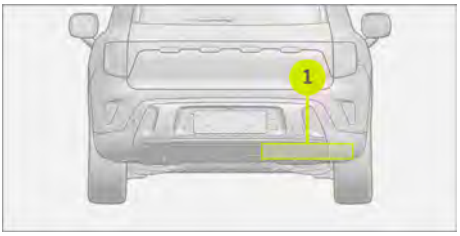
Observe the notes on opening the liftgate.

ⓘ A warning sound will be issued when the foot kick power liftgate is opened or closed.

When kicking, ensure that you stand on the ground firmly, or you may lose balance or fall accidentally.

Observe the following:

- If a kick is not recognised, please take back your foot from the sensing area and then kick again.
- In the sensing area, please do a quick and smooth kick.
- The keyfob or smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped) should be behind the liftgate.
- When kicking, please stand at least 30 cm away from the liftgate.
- When kicking, do not touch the bumper.
- When kicking, do not move too slowly.
- The kick must move towards the sensor.



1 Sensing area.

Limitations of the system

The system may be affected or inoperative under the following circumstances:

- The area around the sensor is dirty due to snow salt, snow or mud.
- There are strong reflective objects within the detection range of the sensor, for example, metal or electroplated metal ground, manhole covers, multi-story parking lots, etc.
- Severe weather such as heavy rain and heavy snow.
- Deep water on the road.
- People wear shoe covers with radio wave absorption characteristics.

The liftgate may open or close accidentally under the following circumstances:

- Someone's arm or leg moves within the detection range of the sensor, such as polishing the vehicle or picking up an item.
- Someone moves or places objects behind the vehicle.
- Severe weather such as heavy rain and heavy snow.
- Deep water on the road.
- There are small animals moving around the liftgate, such as cats and dogs.
- The Car Wash mode is not turned on, and the high-pressure water gun directly flushes the liftgate.

Setting the opening angle of the power liftgate

Manually adjusting the liftgate opening angle

If necessary, you can set the liftgate opening angle.

1. Manually open the liftgate to the desired height.
2. Press and hold the button on the lower edge of the liftgate until an audible signal is heard.
3. At this time, the opening angle is set.

Restoring the maximum opening angle:

1. Manually open the liftgate to the highest position.
2. Press and hold the button on the liftgate until an audible signal is heard.

Setting the liftgate opening angle through the centre display

You can adjust the opening height of the liftgate to the extent that suits your needs.

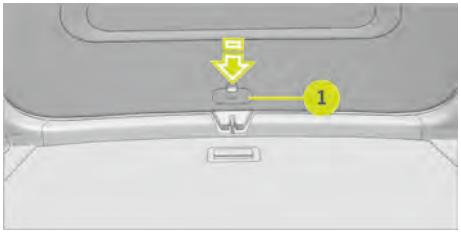
Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Quick Controls* > *Liftgate Height Presetting* to adjust the liftgate opening angle.

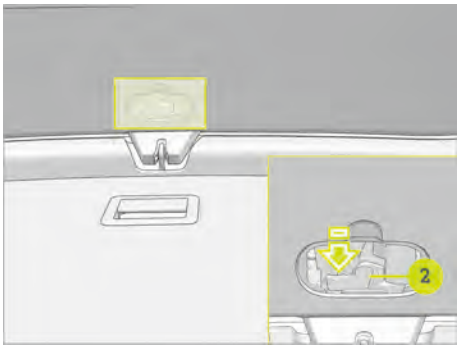
Opening the liftgate mechanically

If the battery is low or the door lock mechanism is damaged, the liftgate can be opened from the inside mechanically. The operation steps are as follows:

1. Fold the second row seat backrest forward.



2. Press the clip and remove the trim panel 1.



3. Press the unlock switch 2, then the liftgate unlocks.

Windows

Opening and closing the windows

WARNING Risk of being trapped when opening and closing a window

When opening and closing a window, parts of the body could be drawn in or be trapped between the window and window frame.

- ► When opening/closing the windows, make sure nobody is within the movement range of the windows.
- ► If someone is trapped, release the window button immediately.

WARNING Risk of being trapped when children operate the windows

Children could be trapped if they operate the windows, particularly when unattended.

- ► Enable the rear window child lock.
- ► When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.
- ► Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



One-touch up: Pull the window button upward to the second position and release it, then the window will be lifted to the top.

Lift: Pull the window button upward to the first position, then the window will be lifted continuously. When you release the window button or the window is lifted to the top, the window will stop.

One-touch down: Press the window button to the second position and release it, then the window will be lowered to the bottom.

Lower: Press the window button to the first position, then the window will be lowered continuously. When you release the window button or the window is lowered to the bottom, the window will stop.

Do not operate the window button frequently in a short period of time.

When the temperature of the window motor is too high, the overtemperature protection will be triggered and the window cannot be lifted or lowered. After a period of time, when the motor temperature drops to the normal working range, the window can be lifted and lowered normally. If the normal use is still impossible, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

The window will be lifted briefly (a short distance) or lowered briefly (a short distance) in the following situations:

- When all windows are closed, if you need to open a door, the window will lower slightly for easy opening of the door.
- When the window is in lowered state, the window will be lifted up briefly once the door is closed to prevent water entry.
- When a door is being opened as its window sits at the very bottom, the window will rise slightly to prevent shaking.

When the vehicle is powered off and all windows are fully closed, do not open doors if unnecessary.

Window's anti-pinch feature

If the window is hindered by an object during closing, the anti-pinch function will be triggered, and the window will stop first and then automatically lower.

In the closing process, ensure that no objects or body parts are hindering the window closing movement.

WARNING Risk of being trapped despite the anti-pinch protection of the windows

The anti-pinch function does not react in the following situations:

- Soft, small objects, or parts of a human body.
- During self-learning of anti-pinch function.

The anti-pinch function cannot prevent people from being trapped in these situations.

- ▶ During closing of windows, ensure that there are no objects or body parts that hinder the closing action of windows.
- ▶ If someone is trapped, press the window button to open the window again.

Controlling the windows from the centre display

The switches on the driver's door have higher priority, and the window opening position can also be adjusted on the centre display.

Closing all windows

- Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display, and tap the button **Close All Windows** to close all windows.

Opening all windows

- Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display, and tap the button **Open All Windows** to open all windows.

Window ventilation

- Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display, and tap the button **Window Ventilation** to open the window slightly for ventilation.

Auto Window Closing while Locking

WARNING Risk of pinching when using Auto Window Closing while Locking

When you lock the vehicle, parts of people's body could be drawn in or trapped between the window and window frame.

► When you lock the vehicle, ensure nobody touches the windows.

After Auto Window Closing while Locking is turned on, when you lock the vehicle, all windows will be automatically closed.

Turning on/off the Auto Window Closing while Locking

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Lock-related Settings* > *Lock-sensitive Window Closing* to enable/disable lock-sensitive window closing.

Easy opening

WARNING Risk of being trapped when opening and closing a window

When opening and closing a window, parts of the body could be drawn in or be trapped between the window and window frame.

► When opening and closing windows, make sure that nobody is touching the window.

► If someone is trapped, release the window button immediately.

Press and hold the button on the keyfob, or swipe and hold the NFC key in the sensing area of B pillar when the vehicle is in locked state, then the vehicle will perform the following functions:

- Unlock the vehicle
- Open the window
- Unfold the exterior door mirrors automatically (if the function is enabled)

Press the button on the keyfob again midway to interrupt the above operation.

Easy closing

WARNING Risk of becoming trapped due to accidental operation of convenient closing function

When the convenient closing function is in operation, body parts could be trapped in the closing areas of the windows or sunshade in the process.

► When closing, make sure that no body parts are in the closing area.

Press and hold the button on the keyfob, swipe the NFC key in the sensing area of B pillar when the vehicle is in unlocked state, or press and hold the sensing area of the outside door handle carrying the keyfob, then the vehicle will perform the following functions:

- Lock the vehicle
- Close the windows
- Fold the exterior door mirrors automatically (if the function is enabled)
- Closing the sunroof sunshade

Press the button on the keyfob again midway to interrupt the above operation.

Problems with windows

Possible causes of windows not being able to close:

1. Check whether there are objects in the window guides.
2. Adjust the windows.

- If the windows are obstructed during closing or the One Touch Up function of

the windows is malfunctioning, follow the steps below to perform window learning:

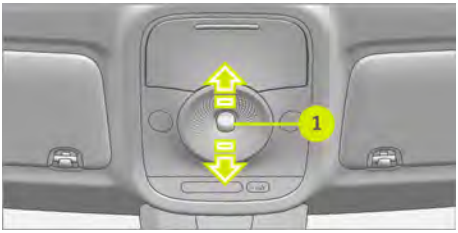
- Pull the switch upward, and release it 3 seconds after the window has reached the top.
- Press the switch to lower the window to the bottom and then release the switch.
- Pull the switch up to lift the window to the top and then release the switch.
- After the learning is completed, test whether the One Touch Up function is normal.

It is your responsibility to ensure that windows are closed after the vehicle is locked.

Sunroof

Opening and closing the sunshade

Open and close the sunshade with the sunshade switch to control the amount of light entering the vehicle from the sunroof.



Open: Push and hold the switch 1 along the rear of the vehicle to the first resistance point, then the sunroof sunshade will keep open.

Close: Push and hold the switch 1 along the front of the vehicle to the first resistance point, then the sunroof sunshade will keep closed.

One-touch open: Push the switch 1 along the rear of the vehicle to the second resistance point and release it, then the sunroof sunshade will open. In the opening process of the sunroof sunshade, if you push the toggle switch 1 in the opposite direction, the sunroof sunshade will stop opening.

One-touch close: Push the switch 1 along the front of the vehicle to the second resistance point and release it, then the sunroof sunshade will close. In the closing process of the sunroof sunshade, if you push the toggle switch 1 in the opposite direction, the sunroof sunshade will stop closing.

Adjusting the sunroof sunshade through the centre display

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Quick Controls* > and adjust the sunroof sunshade (**Closed**, **25%**, **50%**, **75%** and **Open**) or drag the slider to adjust the sunroof sunshade.

Auto Sunroof Sunshade Closing while Locking

After this function is turned on, when you lock the vehicle, the sunroof sunshade will be automatically closed.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Vehicle Lock-Associated Settings* > *Auto Sunroof Sunshade Closing while Locking* to turn on/off the Auto Sunroof Sunshade Closing while Locking.

Anti-theft Protection

Anti-theft system

WARNING Risks of modifying the anti-theft system

Do not modify the anti-theft system by alteration or addition. Such modifications may cause system failure.

The anti-theft system is an electronic system to protect valuables such as the vehicle and personal property.

The anti-theft system prevents others from illegally starting your vehicle. Only after receiving the key information

matching the vehicle can the vehicle be started. If the anti-theft system is enabled, the vehicle status will be continuously monitored. An alarm will be triggered when the door/liftgate is not opened legally.

If the driver information display indicates that the anti-theft system is faulty, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection as soon as possible.

When the vehicle is locked and the anti-theft system is enabled, an alarm will be triggered under the following conditions:

- Any door, the liftgate, or the bonnet is opened without a valid key.
- The alcohol lock (if equipped) of the vehicle is triggered.
- An unauthorized attempt to start the vehicle is detected.
- Motion in the cabin is detected when the vehicle is equipped with interior motion sensors.
- The vehicle is lifted or towed when it is equipped with motion and tilt sensors.
- The 12V battery cable is disconnected.

NOTE

This vehicle features an anti-theft system, but it can not prevent all acts of theft and make sure the absolute safety of the vehicle.

If there is strong electromagnetic interference around the vehicle, such as power plant and signal tower, the anti-theft system may not work normally.

Enabling/disabling the anti-theft protection

When the vehicle is locked, the anti-theft system will be enabled automatically. After the vehicle is unlocked, the anti-theft system will be automatically disabled.

- If a door is not closed, the vehicle cannot be locked and the anti-theft system cannot be switched on.
- If the liftgate is open, the anti-theft system will be partially enabled. After the liftgate is closed, the anti-theft system will be fully enabled.

Disabling the triggered anti-theft alarm

When the alarm is triggered, the following will happen:

- The alarm sounds for 30 seconds or until it is switched off.
- The hazard warning lights flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

The alarm time and the flashing time of the hazard warning lights may vary according to the regulations of different countries. The actual alarm effect shall prevail.

Switching off the alarm

You can turn off the triggered alarm system in any of the following ways:

- Use the keyfob, NFC key or smart APP with Bluetooth key (if equipped) to unlock the vehicle.
- Start the vehicle.

Using the smart APP to control the vehicle remotely (remote unlock excluded) cannot turn off the triggered anti-theft system.

Steering wheel lock (if equipped)

When the vehicle is locked, the steering wheel lock will prevent the vehicle from turning.

Mechanical noise may be heard when the steering wheel is being locked or unlocked.

Enabling the steering wheel lock

The steering wheel lock will be enabled when any of the following conditions is met.

- The vehicle is locked from outside.
- The vehicle enters the sleep mode.

Disabling the steering wheel lock

When the vehicle is unlocked from the outside and not in P gear or the vehicle enters the Rescue mode, the steering wheel lock will be disabled.

Motion and tilting alarm (if equipped)

When the alarm is enabled, motion and tilting sensors will detect the vehicle's movement or changes in the vehicle's tilt angle relative to the ground. Significant changes in the vehicle's tilt angle or vehicle movement can activate the alarm.

Vehicle intrusion alarm (if equipped)

When the vehicle intrusion alarm is enabled, the interior motion sensors will detect movement inside the vehicle, including the airflow passing through open windows.

When the alarm is fully enabled and the alarm sensors are active, any significant movement in the cabin can trigger the alarm.

To avoid accidental triggering of the alarm:

- Please close all windows when leaving the vehicle.
- When the A/C is working, the air outlets shall be adjusted to prevent it from blowing upward in the cabin.

Seats

Adjusting the driver's seat to optimal position

WARNING Risk of injury due to vehicle settings adjustment while the vehicle is running

You could lose control of the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- You adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel or mirrors while the vehicle is running.
- You fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is running.

► Before starting the vehicle, adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and wear the seat belt correctly.

When adjusting the driver's seat, the steering wheel and the seat belt, observe the following:

- You are as far away from the driver's airbag as possible.
- Sit in an almost upright posture with the back against the seat backrest.
- Sit with the legs slightly supported on the seat cushion.
- Your legs are not fully extended and you can press the pedals properly.
- The contact point between the centre of the head restraint and the back of your head is flush with your eyes.
- You can reach the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- You can move your legs freely.
- All information on the driver information display and the head-up display (if equipped) can be clearly seen.
- You can be fully aware of traffic conditions.
- When adjusting the seat position, do not touch any moving parts to avoid injury and/or component damage.
- Your seat belt is pulled snugly against your body and is routed across the centre of your shoulder and across your hips in the pelvic area.

Electrically adjusting the front seats

WARNING Risk of injury due to vehicle settings adjustment while the vehicle is running

You could lose control of the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- You adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel or mirrors while the vehicle is running.
- You fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is running.

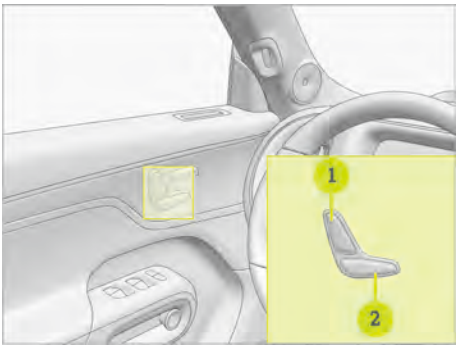
► Before starting the vehicle, adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and wear the seat belt correctly.

WARNING Risk of injury due to adjusting the seats incorrectly

► Make sure that the front seats are locked in place before driving. Otherwise, personal injury could occur in case of an accident or emergency braking.

► Never adjust the seat when the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise, the vehicle may lose control.

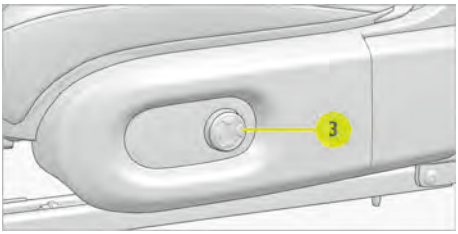
► Adjust the seat correctly and make sure the brake pedal can be pressed down all the way. As long as this condition is met, adjust the seat as far back as possible to make sure the seating is comfortable and the vehicle is easy to operate.



Seat backrest angle adjustment: Push the control button 1 forward/backward.

Seat forward/backward position adjustment: Push the control button 2 forward/backward.

Seat cushion height adjustment: Push the rear end of the control button 2 up/down.



Lumbar support adjustment: Press the front/rear/top/bottom of the control button 3.

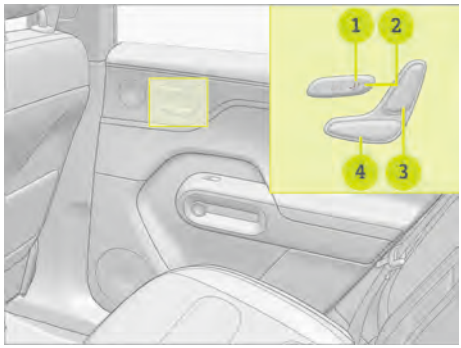
The seat adjustment function features an anti-play mechanism, and the seat motor has overheating protection. Frequent seat adjustments in a short period of time may disable the seat adjustment function. At this time, please try again after some time.

Adjust the seat height to the lowest position when you need to adjust the front seat backrest to the upright position and the front position. Verify the distance between the seat head restraint and the sun visor/headliner during fore-aft adjustment to avoid crushing damage.

Adjusting the front seats through the centre display

For detailed steps, please refer to the instructions in the Seat interface (→ Page 193).

Boss button (front passenger seat adjustment from rear seat)

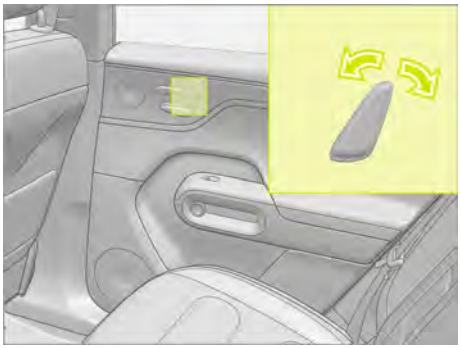


Press the boss button 1, then the work indicator lamp 2 comes on, and the control buttons 3 and 4 can adjust the front passenger's seat:

- **Seat backrest angle adjustment:** Push the control button 3 forward/backward.
- **Seat forward/backward position adjustment:** Push the control button 4 forward/backward.

If the working indicator lamp 2 is not on, you can operate the control button 3 to adjust the rear-row seats. There will be no response if you operate the control button 4.

Adjusting the second row seats



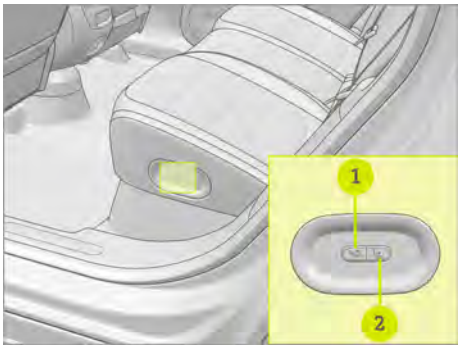
Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat backrest angle.

Adjusting the second-row seats through the centre display

For detailed steps, please refer to the instructions in the Seat interface (→ Page 193).

One-button comfort mode

The one-button comfort mode is aimed at providing a distinguished and comfortable seat experience for rear seat passengers.



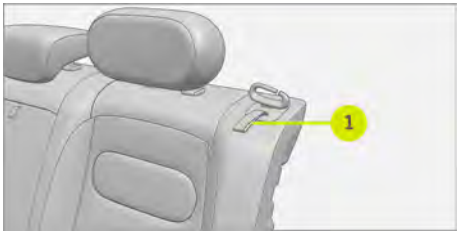
Activation: Press the button 1 to activate the one-button comfort mode, then the front passenger's seat will be automatically adjusted forward, and the second-row seat backrest will be automatically adjusted to a comfortable position.

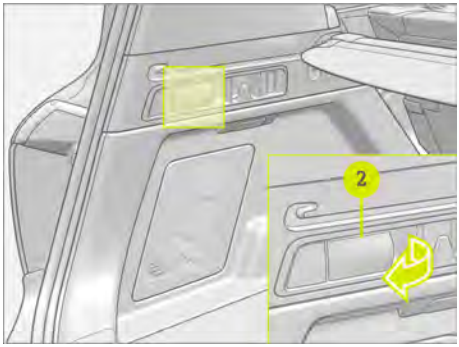
Exit: Press the button 2 to exit the one-button comfort mode, then the seat will return to the position before activation.

In one-button comfort mode, the seat has no position memory function and cannot be set to a dedicated position. Every time you get in the vehicle, the seat will be automatically adjusted to the previously adjusted position (if the last adjustment was accidentally interrupted, the seat will be automatically adjusted to the interrupted position when you get in the vehicle next time).

When there is someone in the passenger seat, only the backrest of the second-row seats is adjusted if the one-button comfort mode is activated, while the passenger seat remains stationary.

Folding/unfolding the second-row seat backrests





Folding the seat backrests

Pull the pull ring 1 or lever 2 to fold the seat backrest.

Unfolding the seat backrests

Push the seat backrest backward to the stop position. After the adjustment, shake the backrest to ensure it is firmly secured.

Head restraint

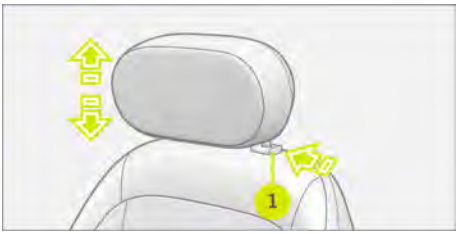
WARNING Risk of injury due to improperly installed or adjusted head restraint

If the head restraint is not properly installed or adjusted, it will not provide the best level of protection.

This increases the risk of head and neck injuries, such as in an accident or braking.

- ► Always drive the vehicle with the head restraint installed.
- ► Adjust the head restraint before the journey and make sure the top of the head restraint is flush with the top of your head.

Never exchange the head restraints of the front seats and the second-row seats. Otherwise, the height of the head restraints can not be adjusted correctly.



Adjusting the height of head restraint:

Press the button 1 and push the head restraint down to lower it.

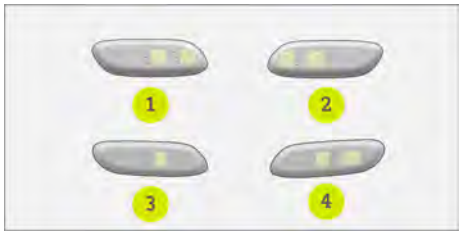
Removing/installing the head restraint:

Press the button 1 and push upward the head restraint to remove it; insert the bars into the guide sleeves and push down the head restraint until it is locked.

The removal and installation methods of front and rear seat head restraints are the same.

Seat comfort

Button area



1. Driving side: heating button, ventilation button (if equipped)
2. Front passenger side: heating button, ventilation button (if equipped)
3. Left rear side: heating button (if equipped)
4. Right rear side: heating button (if equipped), boss button

The area filled with colour blocks in the diagram is the touch area. Pressing the touch area will activate the corresponding function, and the corresponding work indicator lamp will come on. Pressing the area outside the touch area may not activate the function.

Easy Entry/Exit

WARNING Potential risk of injury caused by Easy Entry/Exit

Easy Entry/Exit may cause harm to passengers in the second-row seats

- If there are passengers behind the seat, when Easy Entry/Exit is activated, the backward movement of the seat may cause injury.

Both the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat are equipped with Easy Entry/Exit, making it easier for you and passengers to get in and out of the vehicle.

Enter the seat interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Easy Entry/Exit (Driver/Front Passenger)* to turn on/off the Easy Entry/Exit. After turning on the Easy

Entry/Exit of the driver's seat, you can set the trigger conditions to **Close the door** and **Step on the brake pedal**.

If the vehicle stops completely and is shifted into P gear and the driver/front passenger's door is opened, the corresponding seat will adjust to an appropriate position for easy exit. After the seat performs the movement of Easy Exit, when the vehicle is locked, the seat will automatically move forward and upward for farewell ceremony. When the vehicle is unlocked again, the seat will automatically move backward and downward to the Easy Exit position for welcome ceremony.

When you or the front passenger gets in the vehicle and sits down, and closes the driver's door (or steps on the brake pedal if the trigger condition is set to **Step on the brake pedal**) or the front passenger's door, the seat will automatically return to the position before activation.

After Easy Entry/Exit is enabled, if the driver manually adjusts the seat position when getting in or out of the vehicle, Easy Entry/Exit will not be triggered afterward.

Setting the seat position for exit:

- After the seat is adjusted to the appropriate position using the seat button, a window will pop up on the centre display/passenger side display. Tap the button **Save Courtesy Position** on the pop-up window to set the current seat position to the exit position.
- Enter the seat interface: Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Easy Entry/Exit (Driver/Front Passenger)* > *Save Current Position* to set the current seat position to the exit position.

Seat heating

WARNING

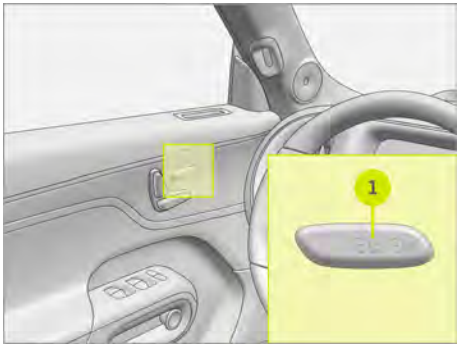
Do not use the seat heating function if you or the passengers are sick, disabled, unconscious, etc., and cannot sense the seat temperature physically.

The seat heating function is only turned on after the vehicle is powered on.

Depending on the configuration, your vehicle may not be equipped with the rear seat heating function. The actual vehicle shall prevail.

Except for the driver's seat, when the passenger leaves the seat for more than 2 minutes, the seat heating function will automatically turn off (for saving power).

The seat heating and seat ventilation functions are mutually exclusive and cannot be turned on at the same time.



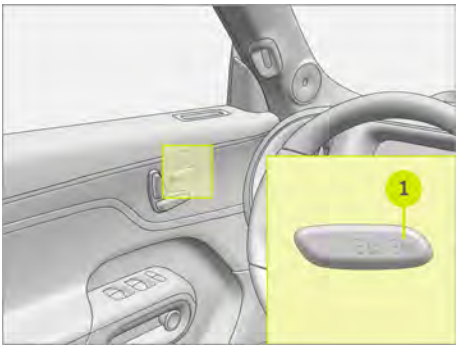
- Press the seat heating button 1 repeatedly to cycle through the heating levels. In this way, the user can select the heating level as needed.
- Enter the seat interface: Tap > *Ventilation/Heating*, and repeatedly tap the button on the seat model to cycle through the heating levels. In this way, the user can select the heating level as needed.

Seat ventilation (if equipped)

The seat ventilation function is only turned on after the vehicle is powered on.

Except for the driver's seat, when the passenger leaves the seat for more than 2 minutes, the seat ventilation function will automatically turn off (for saving power).

The seat heating and seat ventilation functions are mutually exclusive and cannot be turned on at the same time.



- Press the seat ventilation button 1 repeatedly to cycle through the ventilation levels. In this way, the user can select the ventilation level as needed.
- Enter the seat interface: Tap > *Ventilation/Heating*, and repeatedly tap the button on the seat model to cycle through the ventilation levels. In this way, the user can select the ventilation level as needed.

Steering Wheel

Manually adjusting the steering wheel

WARNING Risk of injury due to vehicle settings adjustment while the vehicle is running

You could lose control of the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- You adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel or mirrors while the vehicle is running.
- You fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is running.

▶ Before starting the vehicle, adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and wear the seat belt correctly.

WARNING Risk of entrapment for children when adjusting the steering wheel

Children could injure themselves if they adjust the steering wheel.

▶ Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

▶ When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.



1. Pull down the lever 1 to the stop position, then the steering column will be unlocked.
2. **Steering wheel height adjustment:** Up/down adjustment.
3. **Steering wheel distance adjustment:** Forward/backward adjustment.
4. Pull up the lever 1 to the stop position, then the steering column will be locked in place.
5. Shake the steering wheel to ensure that the steering column is locked.

Memory Function

Notes on memory function

WARNING Accident risk due to using memory function while the vehicle is in motion

If the driver's seat memory function is used while the vehicle is in motion, the adjustment may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

► Use the memory function only when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING Risk of becoming trapped when using memory function to set the seat

When the memory function adjusts the seat, you and other vehicle occupants (especially children) may be trapped.

► When using the memory function to adjust the seat, make sure that body parts are not within the moving range of the seat; if someone is caught, adjust the seat manually immediately to interrupt the seat memory setting.

WARNING Risk of becoming trapped when children use memory function

If children enable memory function, they may be trapped, especially when unattended.

► Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

► When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Memory function of the seat

WARNING Risk of injury due to vehicle settings adjustment while the vehicle is running

You could lose control of the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- You adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel or mirrors while the vehicle is running.
- You fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is running.

► Before starting the vehicle, adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and wear the seat belt correctly.

WARNING Risk of being trapped despite the anti-pinch protection of the seat

The anti-pinch function does not react in the following situations:

- Soft, small objects, or parts of a human body.
- During self-learning of anti-pinch function.

The anti-pinch function cannot prevent people from being trapped in these situations.

► Before door closing, make sure that there are no objects or body parts hindering the movement of the seat.

► If someone is caught, manually adjust the switch on the seat immediately to move away the seat.

Both the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat are equipped with the seat position memory function.

During switching to a preference position or entering/exiting the Rest mode, the driver/front passenger's seat will automatically move. If there are objects hindering the movement, the seat will stop moving. During movement, ensure that there are no objects or body parts hindering the movement of the seat.

Setting the memorized seat position

The memorized position of the driver's seat will change as per the logged personal account.

Both the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat can memorize 3 positions, namely, Personal Preference 1, Personal Preference 2, and Personal Preference 3. The names of the Personal Preference can be edited as needed.

Storage:

- Method 1: After the seat is adjusted to the appropriate position using the seat button, a window will pop up on the centre display/passenger side display. At this time, you can tap ◀ / ▶ on the pop-up window to select the Personal Preference, and tap **Save** to save the position to the selected Personal Preference.
- Method 2: After the seat is adjusted to the appropriate position through the centre display, the seat interface will display the memory button. At this time, you can tap **Save** to save the position to the current Personal Preference.

Restore: This button can bring the seat back to the memorized position of the current Personal Preference. For example, when adjusting the seat in Personal Preference 1 mode, tap the **Restore** button, then the seat will return to the memorized position of Personal Preference 1.

Interrupt: During the automatic movement of the seat, if you tap the Personal Preference (1–3) on the centre display/passenger side display, the current movement will be interrupted and a new command will be executed, or if you manually adjust the seat, the current movement will be interrupted.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a passenger side display, the passenger seat position memory function can be controlled through the centre display by the same operation method.

Seat position self-learning

When the auto seat adjustment fails (such as Easy Entry/Exit failure and seat position memory failure), and the seat model on the centre display is abnormal, the seat position may be lost. Please follow the steps below to learn the seat position:

1. Adjust the seat backward to the soft stop position, then adjust it again until the seat moves to the limit position, and then continue to adjust it 5 times quickly in 5 s.
2. Adjust the seat backrest forward to the soft stop position, then adjust it again until the seat moves to the limit position, and then continue to adjust it 5 times quickly in 5 s.
3. Adjust the seat downward to the soft stop position, then adjust it again until the seat moves to the limit position, and then continue to adjust it 5 times quickly in 5 s.
4. Adjust the seat cushion angle downward to the soft stop position, then adjust it again until the seat moves to the limit position, and then continue to adjust it 5 times quickly in 5 s.

Storage Space

Notes on loading the vehicle

WARNING Risk of injury from unsecured items in the vehicle

There is a risk of objects slipping or being flung around and hitting vehicle occupants in the event of emergency braking or a sudden change of direction if they are not secured inside the vehicle sufficiently.

- ▶ Always stow objects in such a way that they cannot be flung around.
- ▶ Before the journey, secure objects against slipping or tipping over.

WARNING Risk of injury due to objects being stowed inappropriately

There is a risk of objects slipping or being flung around and hitting vehicle occupants in the event of emergency braking or a sudden change of direction if they are not stowed inside the vehicle appropriately. For examples, cup holders, open stowage spaces and mobile phone brackets cannot retain all the objects they contain in the event of an accident.

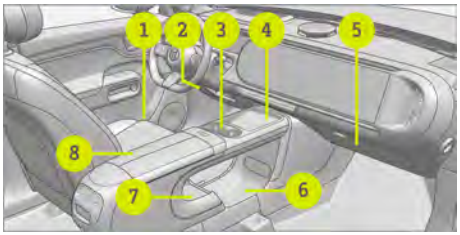
- ► Always stow objects in such a way that they cannot be flung around in these or similar situations.
- ► Always make sure that objects do not protrude from stowage spaces, luggage nets or stowage nets.
- ► Close all lockable stowage spaces before starting a journey.
- ► Always stow and secure heavy, hard, sharp-edged or fragile objects or objects that are too large in the boot.

The driving performance of a loaded vehicle depends on the distribution of the load in the vehicle. Observe the following for loading:

- Do not surpass the gross vehicle weight rating and front/rear axle load capacities.
- The load must not be higher than the upper edge of the seat backrest.
- When luggage is stored in the boot, ensure that a boot cover is installed.
- Secure the luggage with luggage retaining buckles in the boot and distribute the load evenly.

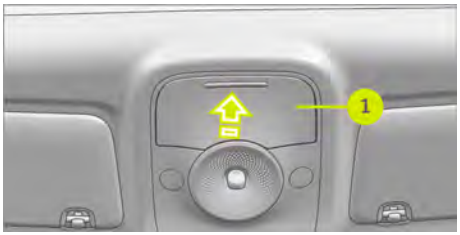
Interior storage space

Overview of front storage space



1. Storage area in the door
2. Driver side lower storage box
3. Centre console cup holders
4. Storage area before centre console (wireless charging area)
5. Glove box
6. Storage area below centre console
7. Storage area below centre console
8. Centre console armrest box storage area

Opening the glasses box in the centre of the headliner



Press 1 in the arrowed direction to open the glasses case in the centre of the headliner.

Storage area behind the centre console



Storage area in the second-row seat armrest



Pull the rope ring outward to unfold the second-row seat armrest.

1 Press to unfold the cup holder.
2 Open the storage area upward.

Boot access inside the vehicle

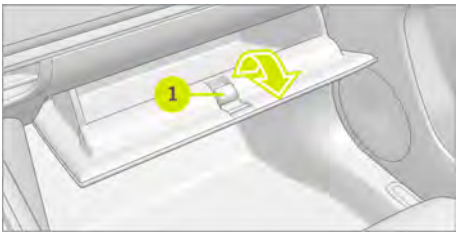


1. Unfold the second-row seat armrest.
2. Push the load-through hatch cover 1 to open the access.
3. If you need to close the hatch, pull the cover 1 in the opposite direction to the stop position.

Hook on the front passenger side

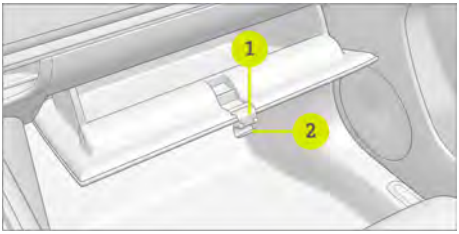
NOTE

The hook can withstand a maximum load of 2.0 kg. Do not exceed the maximum load, for fear of damaging the hook.



1 Hook

To use the hook, unfold it outward.



To retract the hook, first retract the metal bracket 1 in place, and then retract the plastic bracket 2 in place.

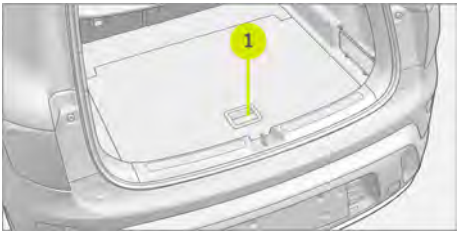
If the hook is not engaged in place, the glove box may not be closed.

Opening/closing the boot floor cover

WARNING Risk of injury due to opening the boot floor cover.

If you drive with the boot floor cover open, objects may be flung around and hit the passengers. There is a risk of injury, particularly in the event of sudden braking or a sudden change in direction.

► Close the boot floor cover before each journey.



To **open**: Pull the handle 1 upward and lift the boot floor cover upward.

To **close:** Put the boot floor cover back in place.

Boot curtain

WARNING Risk of injury or death due to objects being poorly secured

The boot curtain alone cannot secure any heavy objects, items of luggage or heavy loads.

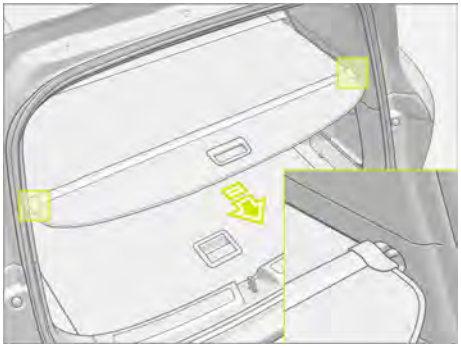
In the event of abrupt changes in direction, braking or an accident, you may be struck by unsecured loads.

► Always stow objects in such a way that they cannot be flung around.

NOTE Damage to the boot curtain during vehicle loading

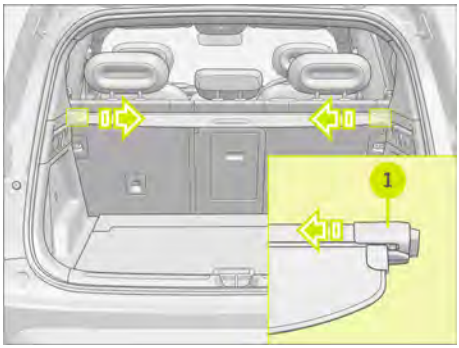
During loading of the vehicle, the boot curtain may be damaged.

► Never put anything on the boot curtain.



To use the boot curtain, pull out the curtain and hang it in the fixing grooves on both sides.

Installing and removing the boot curtain



Removal: Press the boot curtain shaft sleeve 1 towards the centre, and remove the boot curtain from the grooves, in the forward direction.

Installation: Press the boot curtain shaft sleeve 1 towards the centre, and place the boot curtain in the grooves from the front to the rear.

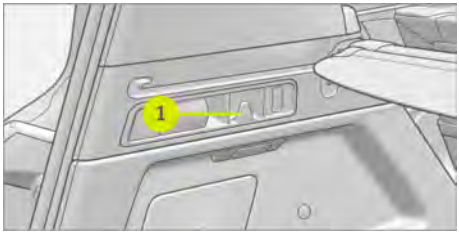
Overview of boot hooks

WARNING Risk of injury caused by hanging heavy objects on hooks

Hooks cannot fix heavy objects. During braking or emergency steering, objects may be flung around and hit the passengers.

► Never hang hard, sharp-edged or fragile objects on the hooks.

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle.



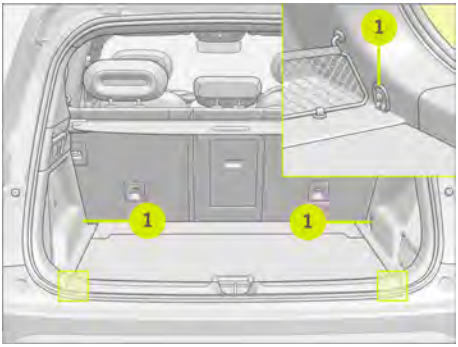
1 Hook

The hook can hold loads up to 2.5 kg. Do not use them to secure any cargo.

Luggage retention buckle in the boot

When loading cargo in the boot, be sure to store the cargo properly and use the boot luggage retention buckles to secure them.

Observe the notes on loading the vehicle.



1 Luggage retention buckle

Notes on the roof racks

WARNING Risk of injury due to exceeding the maximum roof load

After loading on the roof rails, the centre of gravity of the vehicle rises, and the driving characteristics, steering and braking characteristics of the vehicle are affected. When cornering, the vehicle tilts more seriously and may react more slowly to steering.

If the maximum roof load is exceeded, the driving characteristics, steering and braking characteristics of the vehicle will be seriously affected.

- ► Observe the maximum roof load and adjust your driving style.

NOTE Roof racks not approved by smart may cause damage to the vehicle.

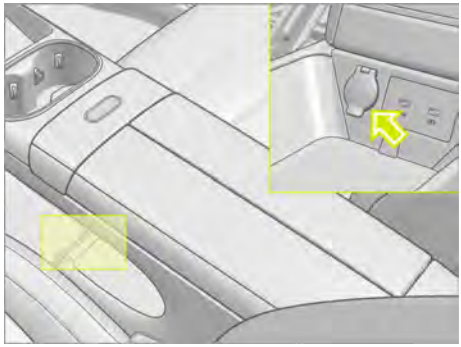
- ► Only roof rack approved by smart can be used.
- ► After installing the roof rack, ensure that the liftgate can be fully opened.
- ► When loading the roof rack, ensure that the vehicle will not be damaged during driving.
- ► Pay attention to the distance between the add-on roof rack and the sunroof to ensure that the roof rack will not damage the sunroof.

The maximum load capacity of the roof rack is 100 kg.

Power Sockets

Using the 12 V power supply

The vehicle is equipped with two 12 V power outlets respectively located in the centre console and the boot (if equipped).





Electronic equipment (e.g., electric inflation pump in tyre repair kit) can be charged through the 12 V power outlets.

For the 12V power outlets, the rated output voltage is 12V and the maximum power is 120 W.

WARNING Risk of accidents caused by improper use of 12 V power outlet

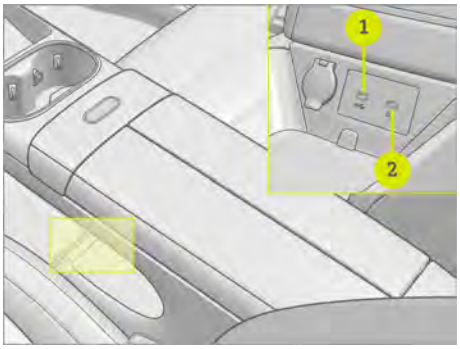
- ► Do not insert your fingers or foreign objects (e.g., pens, etc.) into the 12 V power outlet. Otherwise, there will be a risk of short circuits and electric shock.
- ► Do not use electronic devices with power of more than 120 W. Otherwise, the power outlet or other equipment will be damaged or even a fire will occur due to excessive current.
- ► Do not touch the 12 V power outlet with wet hands. Otherwise, there is a risk of electric shock.

NOTE Notes on using the 12 V power outlet

- ► When the power outlet is not in use, be sure to close the power outlet trim cover.
- ► Never make the power outlet come into contact with water or any other liquids.

USB

USB port



The front USB port is located below the centre console.

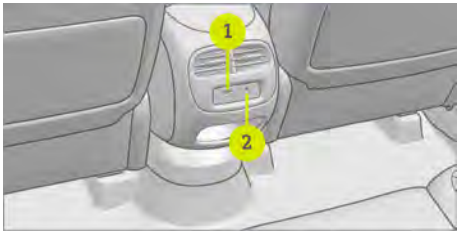
- The USB port 1 supports data transmission and charging, with a maximum charging power of 60 W.
- The USB port 2 only supports charging, with a maximum charging power of 27 W.

NOTE

To avoid compatibility issues, follow the recommendations when using a USB flash drive:

- ► Format the USB flash drive as exFAT.
- ► Use a USB flash drive with a capacity of 128 GB or less.
- ► Choose a USB flash drive from a reliable or well-known brand.

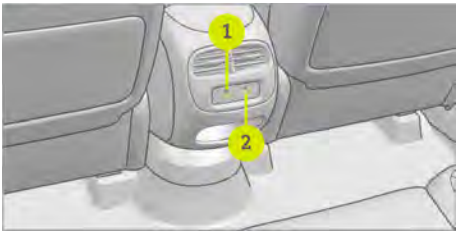
Type I



The rear USB port is located behind the centre console.

- The USB port 1 only supports charging, with a maximum charging power of 60 W.
- The USB port 2 only supports charging, with a maximum charging power of 27 W.

Type II



The rear USB ports are located behind the centre console. Both ports are charge-only and support up to 18W of power output.

Wireless Mobile Phone Charging

Notes on wireless charging

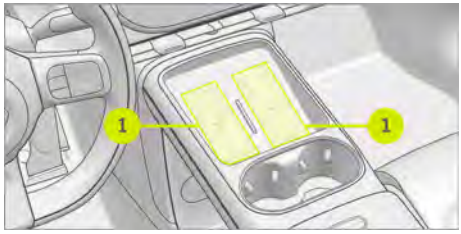
NOTE Damage due to wireless charging

- ▶ Make sure that metal objects are far away from the charging board. Metal objects may overheat the charging board, and even cause accidents.
- ▶ Make sure that credit cards or other magnetic objects are far away from the charging board to avoid magnetic information being erased.

Pay attention to the following during wireless charging:

- The wireless charging function only supports mobile phones, earphones, stereos and other devices that meet the wireless charging protocol.
- When the phone is placed in a position or distance beyond the charging area, the charging efficiency may be affected, or even charging may fail.
- If the centre display prompts "There is an unknown object on the charging pad", it means that there may be other cards/metal objects on the charging pad besides the mobile phone. Please check the charging pad area. The prompt message can be cancelled by moving away the mobile phone, card or metal.
- If the phone case is too thick, charging may fail.
- During driving on a bumpy road, the wireless charging of the mobile phone may intermittently stop and resume.
- If the mobile phone cannot charge normally, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charging area and the mobile phone is in the charging area, or wait till the wireless charging area cools down before trying again.
- During charging, the charging pad and mobile phone will heat up, which is a normal phenomenon. When the temperature is too high, charging may stop, and it will continue when the temperature of the phone cools down.
- For various mobile phones, their wireless charging coils may be in different areas. Please adjust the position of the mobile phone in the wireless charging area to find the most suitable charging area for your mobile phone.

Charging the mobile phone wirelessly



If your phone supports wireless charging, you can charge it on the charging pad 1.

- Please place the phone in the corresponding charging slot to charge it, and ensure that the phone presses the air outlet below. Do not make it press the stop bar in the middle or place it above the air outlet during charging. Otherwise, charging may fail.

- Before placing the phone in the wireless charging area, ensure that there are no objects in this area.
- Place your phone on the centre of the charging pad, then the wireless charging starts automatically.

ⓘ Depending on the specific configuration, your vehicle may only be equipped with one wireless charging pad. For the configuration, the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Enabling/disabling the wireless charging

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display, and tap **Wireless Charging** to turn on/off the wireless charging function.

Floor Mats

Floor mats

⚠ **WARNING** Risk of accident from incorrectly installed floor mats

- ▶ Use floor mats that are designed for the vehicle module and will not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, resulting in personal injury or death.
- ▶ If the pedals cannot move freely, the vehicle may lose control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
- ▶ Secure the floor mats to fitting devices, so they cannot slip out of place and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, resulting in personal injury or death.
- ▶ Do not place extra floor mats or other covers on top of the already installed floor mats, as this may cause the floor mats to interfere with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, resulting in personal injury or death.
- ▶ Store all items in the vehicle properly, so that they cannot get to the position where the driver's feet are. Loose items can get caught under the pedals and cause the vehicle to lose control.



When installing the floor mats, place the floor mats in the correct position, align the floor mat eyelets with the floor mat retaining clips, and then press them for securing.

Remove the floor mats in the reverse order of installation.

Check the floor mats regularly to ensure that they are installed in the correct position.

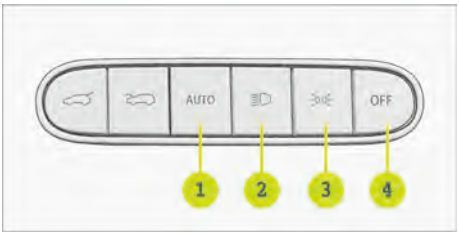
Exterior Lights

Information about the lighting system and your responsibilities

The vehicle's various lighting systems are only aids. The driver is responsible for adjusting the vehicle's lighting systems based on road illumination, visibility, statutory requirements and traffic conditions.

Light switch

Operating the light switch



1 AUTO Auto Headlamp
2 Low beams
3 Position lamp
4 OFF Turning off the lights

Press the switch AUTO, then the position lamps, licence plate lights, daytime running lights and low beams come on automatically according to the external light intensity.

Press the switch to turn on the low beams, position lamps and licence plate lights at the same time.

Press the switch to turn on the position lamps and licence plate lights at the same time.

Press the switch OFF to turn off all lamps except daytime running lights.

Pay attention to safety while driving at night. To turn off the low beams and position lamps, press the switch OFF after shifting into P gear.

Turning on/off lights from the centre display

Enter the Settings interface:

Tap > *Lights*.

- Tap AUTO, then the position lamps, licence plate lights, daytime running lights and low beams come on automatically according to the external light intensity.
- Tap , then the low beams, position lamps and licence plate lights come on at the same time.
- Tap , then the position lamps and licence plate lights come on at the same time.
- Tap OFF, then all lights go out except daytime running lights.

NOTE 12 V battery undervoltage due to long time use of lights

► Do not turn on the lights for a long period of time when the vehicle is not started.

Use vehicle lights correctly according to local laws and regulations.

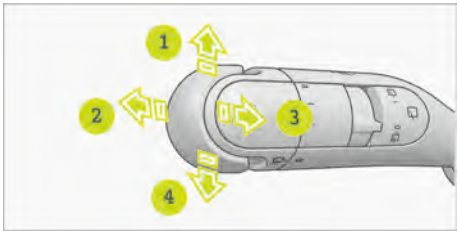
Reversing lamp

When the vehicle reverses, the reversing lamps come on.

Brake light

When the vehicle brakes, the brake lights come on.

Operating the combination switch



1 Right turn signal light
2 High beams
3 High beam flashing
4 Left turn signal light

Turning on the high beam

1. After the vehicle is powered on and the indicator lamp READY on the driver

information display comes on, press the Auto Headlamp AUTO or Low Beam .

2. Toggle the combination switch in the arrowed direction 2.

When the High Beam is enabled, the high beam on indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

Turning off the high beam

When the high beam is turned on, toggle the combination switch in the arrowed direction 2 or the direction 3 again.

If the Intelligent High Beam switch on the centre display is turned on, the high beams will not be turned off by toggling the combination switch in the arrowed direction 2, and the headlamps will switch between the Adaptive High Beam/Automatic High Beam and the high beams.

High beam flashing

After the vehicle is powered on and the indicator lamp READY on the driver information display comes on, toggle the combination switch in the arrowed direction 3.

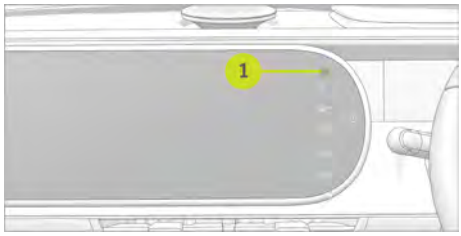
Turn signal light

1. **Brief flashing:** Slightly toggle the combination switch the resistance point in the arrowed direction 1 or 4.

The corresponding turn signal lights will flash 3 times.

2. **Continuous flashing:** Toggle the combination switch in the arrowed direction 1 or 4 to past the resistance point. The combination switch will automatically reset after being released, and the turn signal light will automatically go out after lane change.

Turning on/off the hazard warning lights



ON/OFF: Tap the button 1.

In case of collision or emergency brake, the hazard warning lights may turn on automatically.

Illumination delayed turnoff

If you open any door after locking the vehicle, the Illumination Delayed Turnoff will restart the timer after the vehicle is locked again.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > *Ambient Lights* > *Follow me home* to set the Illumination Delayed Turnoff (**Off**, **30 s**, **60 s** or **90 s**).

After the Illumination Delayed Turnoff is enabled, the Auto Headlamp AUTO will be turned on. After occupants get out of the vehicle, the headlamps will turn off after the set delay time.

Approach lighting

When you approach the vehicle at night or in a dark environment, Approach Lighting will turn on the low beams, position lamps and licence plate lights and keep them on for about 30 seconds.

Approach Lighting can be triggered in the following cases:

- **Detected valid key**: When the vehicle detects a valid key, Approach Lighting will be enabled automatically to turn on the corresponding lights for illumination.
- **Unlocking the vehicle with the keyfob**: When you press the button on the keyfob to unlock the vehicle, Approach Lighting will be enabled automatically to turn on the corresponding lights for illumination.

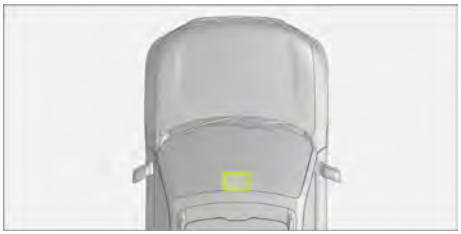
Turning on/off the Approach Lighting

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > *Ambient Lights* > *Approach Lighting* to turn on/off the Approach Lighting.

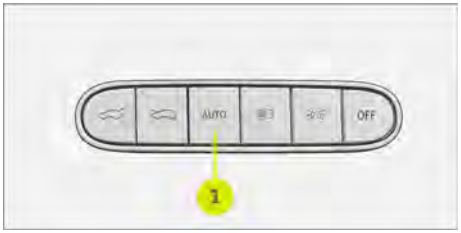
Automatically turning on/off the lights

Auto Headlamp monitors the ambient light intensity through the sensors. When the light is dim, this function can automatically turn on the low beams, position lamps and licence plate lights. When the light is sufficient, these lamps will be automatically turned off.



The rain light sensor is located on the upper part of the front windscreen, and the Auto Wiper/Auto Headlamp/Auto Climate controls the corresponding functions through this sensor.

Auto Headlamp



Press the button 1 on the instrument panel combination switch on the driver side to turn on the Auto Headlamp.

Auto Headlamp is only an assistance system. The driver is responsible for adjusting the vehicle's lighting based on road lighting, visibility, and traffic conditions.

NOTE

Never block the rain light sensor/light sensor. Otherwise, the automatic headlamp/automatic climate control function and automatic wiper function may not work properly.

Headlamp leveling

Type I (for non-matrix headlamp)

Before driving, adjust the headlamp height according to the number of occupants and luggage load.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > *Headlamp Leveling* > *5/4/3/2/1/0* to perform the headlamp leveling.

Type II (for matrix headlamp)

The headlamp leveling is automatically performed according to the vehicle load and suspension movement.

- The headlamp leveling is automatically performed when the vehicle is fully loaded/unloaded.
- When the vehicle is in motion and encounters a bumpy road, the headlamp leveling will be automatically performed.

Adaptive Front-lighting System (if equipped)

Adaptive High Beam adjusts the light angle or light distribution according to road and environmental conditions to improve road illumination.

The system includes the following functions:

- Corner lighting
- Rural lighting
- Urban lighting
- Highway lighting

Adaptive Front-lighting System can help the driver observe the road under poor road light conditions, such as nighttime. Adaptive Front-lighting System is only an assistance system. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle lamps according to the current light, visibility and traffic conditions.

Corner lighting

Corner lighting provides enhanced lighting on bends.



Corner lighting can provide a wide range of lane lighting effects in the turning direction of the vehicle, making it easier to see the road conditions within the turning range.

Enabling conditions:

- Auto Headlamp AUTO is enabled.
- The driver turns the steering wheel to a certain angle and the vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (7 mph).

Rural lighting

Low beams with adaptive light distribution can provide a wider light range for driving on rural roads.

Enabling conditions:

- Auto Headlamp AUTO is enabled.
- Turn on the Adaptive Front-lighting System.
- At a certain speed.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > to turn on/off the Adaptive Front-lighting System.

Urban lighting

Urban lighting uses more widely distributed light to improve the roadside lighting in densely built areas. It is suitable for urban roads with good light.

This function can expand the vision under low beams, making it easier for the driver to observe pedestrians on the roadside.

Enabling conditions:

- Auto Headlamp AUTO is enabled.
- Turn on the Adaptive Front-lighting System.
- At a certain speed.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > to turn on/off the Adaptive Front-lighting System.

Highway lighting

Highway lighting improves road lighting by increasing the range and brightness of light. The driver can observe the road ahead to respond in advance and avoid danger.

Enabling conditions:

- Auto Headlamp AUTO is enabled.
- Turn on the Adaptive Front-lighting System.
- At a certain speed.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > to turn on/off the Adaptive Front-lighting System.

Adaptive High Beam (if equipped)

WARNING Despite the Adaptive High Beam, there is still a risk of accident.

Adaptive High Beam cannot recognise the following road conditions:

- Road users without lighting equipment, such as pedestrians.
- Road users with poor lighting conditions, such as cyclists.
- Road users with lighting equipment obstructed by obstacles.

▶ In rare cases, Adaptive High Beam may not recognize road users or cannot recognize them in time. In this or similar circumstances, Adaptive High Beam will not be disabled, or may be enabled, in which case there is a risk of accident.

▶ Watch the traffic condition carefully and turn off the high beams in time.

Adaptive High Beam does not take into account the road, weather and traffic conditions. Adaptive High Beam is only an aid. You should adjust the lighting of the vehicle based on current lighting, visibility, and traffic conditions.

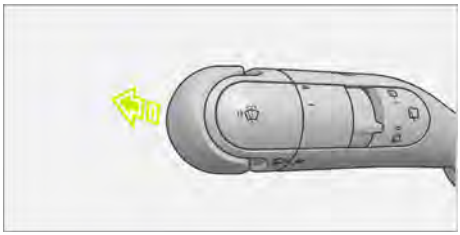
In particular, the obstacle detection function may be affected in the following situations:

- Poor visibility, including conditions with fog, heavy rain or snow.
- Dirty or covered sensors.

After the Adaptive High Beam is turned on, when a front vehicle is detected, some lamp elements aiming at that area will be turned off to avoid the danger caused by dazzling the driver of that vehicle, improving the safety factor and comfort during driving at night.

Adaptive High Beam automatically switches between the following lamps:

- Low beams
- Partial high beams
- High beams



Enabling the Adaptive High Beam

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > *Ambient Lights* > *Intelligent High Beam* to turn on/off the Intelligent High Beam.

After the Intelligent High Beam is turned on, when all the following conditions are met, turn the combination switch in the arrowed direction to enable the Adaptive High Beam.

- The vehicle reaches a certain speed.
- The light switch is in AUTO position.
- The high beams are on.
- It is night and there is no lighting outside.

When the Adaptive High Beam is enabled and the high beams are not on, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on. When the Adaptive High Beam is enabled and the high beams are on, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

Automatic High Beam (if equipped)

WARNING Risk of accident when Automatic High Beam is enabled

Automatic High Beam cannot recognise the following road conditions:

- Road users without lighting equipment, such as pedestrians.
- Road users with poor lighting conditions, such as cyclists.
- Road users with lighting equipment obstructed by obstacles.

► In rare cases, Automatic High Beam may not recognize road users or cannot recognize them in time. In this or similar circumstances, Automatic High Beam will not be disabled, or may be enabled, in which case there is a risk of accident.

► Watch the traffic condition carefully and turn off the high beams in time.

Automatic High Beam does not take the road, weather or traffic conditions into account. Automatic High Beam is only an aid. You should adjust the lighting of the vehicle based on current lighting, visibility, and traffic conditions.

In particular, the obstacle detection function may be affected in the following situations:

- Poor visibility, including conditions with fog, heavy rain or snow.
- Dirty or covered sensors.

After the Automatic High Beam is turned on, when a front vehicle is detected, the system will switch to low beams to avoid the danger caused by dazzling the driver of that vehicle, improving the safety factor and comfort during driving at night.

Automatic High Beam automatically switches between the following lights:

- Low beams
- High beams



Enabling the Automatic High Beam

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > *Ambient Lights* > *Intelligent High Beam* to turn on/off the Intelligent High Beam.

After the Intelligent High Beam is turned on, when all the following conditions are met, turn the combination switch in the arrowed direction to enable the Automatic High Beam.

- The vehicle reaches a certain speed.
- The light switch is in AUTO position.
- The high beams are on.
- It is night and there is no lighting outside.

When the Automatic High Beam is enabled, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

Rear fog lamp

When the visibility is poor, such as fog, heavy rain or snow, the rear fog lamps can be turned on.

Requirements for turning on the rear fog lamps:

- The vehicle is in READY mode.
- Low Beam or Auto Headlamp AUTO is on.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Lights* > to turn on/off the rear fog lamps.

When the rear fog lamps are turned on, the rear fog lamp on indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

Observe the laws and regulations of relevant countries on the use of rear fog lamps.

Reversing lamp

Shift into Reverse R gear, then the reversing lamp will come on to provide lighting and warning.

Requirements for turning on the reversing lamp: The vehicle is in Ready mode and in Reverse R gear.

Emergency stop signal

In case of sudden speed reduction or emergency braking, the brake lamps will flash briefly and sharply, rather than stay on. If the speed drops to about 10 km/h (7 mph), the brake lamps will come on again and the hazard warning lights will be turned on at the same time.

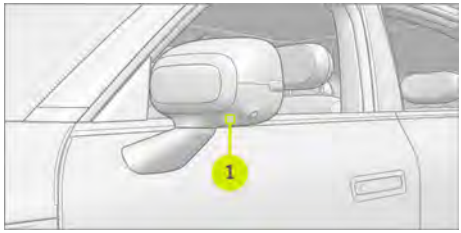
When the vehicle returns to normal driving, the hazard warning lights will stop flashing.

Courtesy light

Exterior courtesy light

After the vehicle is unlocked, the low beams, position lamps, licence plate lights, etc. will be turned on. If the vehicle is equipped with door handle lights, they will come on at the same time.

Exterior door mirror courtesy light



When the vehicle is unlocked, the courtesy lights 1 below the exterior door mirrors will automatically come on.

Step courtesy light (if equipped)

When any door is opened, the step courtesy light will automatically come on. When the illumination time exceeds 2 minutes or all doors are closed, the step courtesy light will automatically go out.

Interior courtesy light

When the vehicle is unlocked and a door is opened, some ambient lamps will come on in white for courtesy.

Interior Lighting

Adjusting the interior lighting

WARNING Risk of injury due to vehicle settings adjustment while the vehicle is running

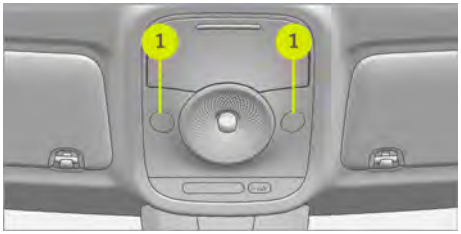
You could lose control of the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- You adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel or mirrors while the vehicle is running.
- You fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is running.
- You operate the interior lights while the vehicle is running.

► Before starting the vehicle, adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and wear the seat belt correctly.

► Please operate the interior lights when the vehicle is stationary.

Front reading lamp:



ON/OFF: Touch/press the reading lamp 1 according to the vehicle configuration.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, pressing and holding the reading lamp switch may adjust the light brightness.

Rear reading lamp:



ON/OFF: Tap the reading lamp 1.

Angle adjustment: Turn the reading lamp 1 up, down, left or right.

Turning on/off the reading lamp from the centre display

- Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display and tap to turn on/off the reading lamp.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Lights* > *Reading Lamp* to turn on/off the reading lamp.

Boot lamp

When the liftgate is open/closed, the boot lamp will turn on/off automatically.

Front luggage compartment lamp

When the front luggage compartment cover is open/closed, the front luggage compartment lamp will turn on/off automatically.

Glove box lamp

When the glove box is open/closed, the glove box lamp will turn on/off automatically.

Courtesy light

- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Lights* > *Ambient Lights* > *Courtesy Light* to turn on/off the courtesy light.

The courtesy light consists of the following lamps:

- Reading lamp.
- Foot lamp.

Conditions for activating the courtesy light:

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- A door is open.

The courtesy light turns off automatically when:

- The vehicle is locked.
- The door is closed.
- The vehicle is in D, N, or R gear.
- The door remains open for about 2 minutes.
- The courtesy light is turned off through the centre display.

Adjusting the ambient lighting

Ambient light is used to ensure that the interior of the vehicle is not too dark during driving, and also to create a pleasant driving environment.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Ambient Light*, then the user can choose the corresponding ambient light theme mode according to personal preference. You can also customize the colour of the ambient lights.

Courtesy ambient light: When the vehicle is powered off, the ambient light will be turned off automatically. When the door is opened, the ambient light will turn on the courtesy effect.

Ambient Light Adaption to Climate: Some of the ambient lights change states with Climate setting, and restore to their previous states after adjustment.

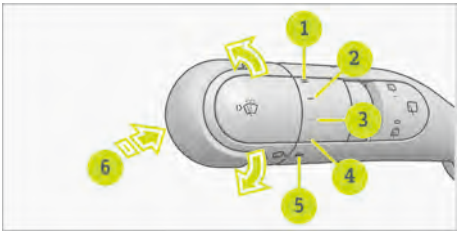
Liftable speaker with ambient light (if equipped): Turn on/off the liftable speaker with ambient light.

Charging ambient light: After the vehicle is connected to the charging gun and enters the charging state, the ambient light displays the corresponding lighting effect.

For more operations on the ambient lights, please refer to "Ambient Light".

Windscreen Wiper and Washer System

Operating the front wiper



1 Continuous wiping, high speed
2 Continuous wiping, low speed
3 Auto wiping, high sensitivity
4 Auto wiping, low sensitivity
5 Front windscreen wiper off

Turn the combination switch to the corresponding position 1 – 5.

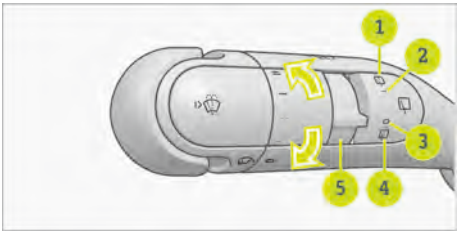
- Wiping once: Press the button on the combination switch in the arrowed direction 6 to the resistance point.
- Wiping with front windscreen washer fluid: Press the button on the combination switch in the arrowed direction 6 past the resistance point.

When the combination switch is turned to the 3 or 4 position, the wiper will work automatically according to the rain.

Frozen washer fluid can prevent the washer system from functioning due to cold climate. If the washer fluid lines are frozen, never use the washer to avoid damage.

When the front wiper is turned on, if the driver's door is opened or nobody is in the driver's seat, the front wiper will stop working to prevent splashing water on the driver.

Operating the rear wiper



1. Wiping with rear windscreen washer fluid
2. Turning on the rear wiper
3. Turning off the rear wiper
4. Wiping with rear windscreen washer fluid

Turn the switch 5 to the corresponding position 1 – 4.

Frozen washer fluid can prevent the washer system from functioning due to cold climate. If the washer fluid lines are frozen, never use the washer to avoid damage.

Rear wiper auto activation setting

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Rear wiper off while reversing* to enable/disable the rear wiper off while reversing function.

After this function is turned on, when the front wiper is working, and at the same time, if the vehicle is shifted into Reverse gear R, the rear wiper will be turned on automatically.

Front wiper maintenance mode

Turn off the front wiper and set it to the maintenance mode when replacing or repairing the front wiper.

Setting the front wiper to the maintenance mode:

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Condition* > *Front Wiper Maintenance Mode* to turn on/off the Front Wiper Maintenance Mode.

Before enabling the front wiper maintenance mode, set the front wiper switch to the OFF position.

Replacing the front wiper blades

WARNING Risk of being trapped if the wipers are switched on while wiper blades are being replaced

If the wipers begin to move while you are replacing the wiper blades, you can be trapped by the wiper.

► Make sure to switch off the wipers before replacing the wiper blades.

Removing the wiper blades

1. Turn on the front wiper maintenance mode (→ Page 90).
2. Fold the wiper arm away from the front windscreen.



3. Hold the wiper arm with one hand, press the clip inward in the arrowed direction 1, and pull the old wiper blade out in the arrowed direction 2 with the other hand.

Installing the wiper blade



1. Align a new wiper blade with the wiper arm in the arrowed direction, and slide the clip till the wiper blade is clamped in the latch position.

2. Ensure the wiper blade is seated properly.
3. Carefully fold the wiper arm back onto the front windscreen.
4. Start the vehicle.
5. Exit the front wiper maintenance mode, then the front wiper arm will return to the original position.

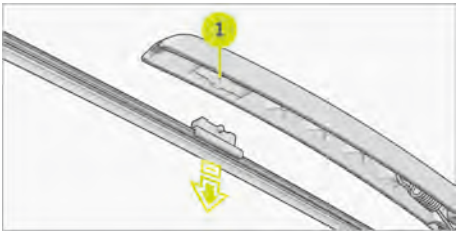
Replacing the rear wiper blade

WARNING Risk of being trapped if the wipers are switched on while wiper blades are being replaced

If the wipers begin to move while you are replacing the wiper blades, you can be trapped by the wiper.

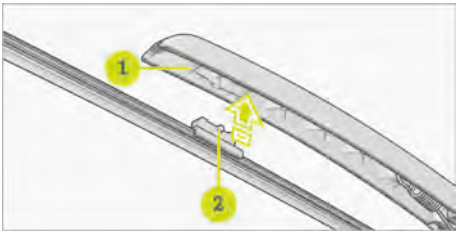
► Make sure to switch off the wipers before replacing the wiper blades.

Removing the wiper blade



1. Fold the wiper arm away from the rear windscreen.
2. Release the wiper blade from the wiper arm bracket 1 in the arrowed direction and remove it.

Installing the wiper blade



1. Place the wiper blade on the wiper arm bracket 1 through two lugs 2.
2. Push the wiper blade in the arrowed direction until it is engaged in the bracket 1.
3. Ensure the wiper blade is seated properly.
4. Carefully fold the wiper arm back onto the rear windscreen.

Exterior and interior mirrors

Adjusting the exterior door mirrors

WARNING Risk of injury due to vehicle settings adjustment while the vehicle is running

You could lose control of the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- You adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel or mirrors while the vehicle is running.
- You fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is running.

► Before starting the vehicle, adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and wear the seat belt correctly.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Quick Controls* > *Door Mirrors*, and operate the direction buttons on the right side of the steering wheel to adjust the exterior door mirrors.

When the seat memory is enabled and a seat position is saved, the position of the exterior door mirrors will be memorized synchronously. When the seat memory function is used next time, the exterior door mirrors will be automatically adjusted to the saved position.

The memorized position will change as personal accounts being switched.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior rearview mirror

The interior mirror has automatic anti-dazzle function. It can sense the rear light and automatically dim the reflected light by the interior mirror.

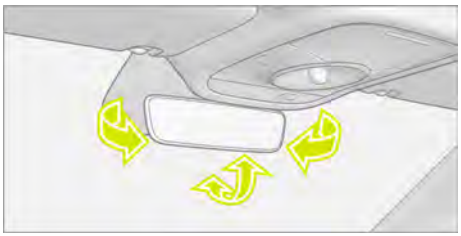
The automatic anti-dazzle function will be disabled under any of the following conditions:

- The vehicle is shifted into R R gear.
- The vehicle is powered off.

NOTE

- The automatic anti-dazzle function works only when the incoming light of the interior rearview mirror is not affected by other objects.
- Do not stick labels or install a digital video recorder on the mirror surface of the interior rearview mirror to avoid affecting the function of the interior rearview mirror.

Adjusting the interior rearview mirror manually



The interior mirror is fixed on the front windscreen and can be turned in the arrowed direction to your desired angle.

Exterior door mirrors heating

Press the rear windscreen defrosting button in the button area of the centre display, then the button indicator lamp comes on, and the exterior door mirrors heating and rear windscreen defrost functions turn on at the same time.

Exterior door mirrors folding

The exterior door mirrors folding function is convenient during driving through a narrow roadway and during parking.

Auto Folding Exterior Mirrors While Locking

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Lock-related Settings* > *Lock-sensitive Mirror Tilt-down* to enable/disable lock-sensitive mirror tilt-down function.

In cold weather, this function may fail due to the frozen exterior door mirrors, which is normal. It is recommended you disable the automatic rearview mirror folding function in cold weather.

Folding/unfolding the exterior door mirrors from the centre display

- Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display, and tap to fold/unfold the exterior door mirrors.

Exterior door mirrors tilt-down when reversing

Enter the Settings interface:

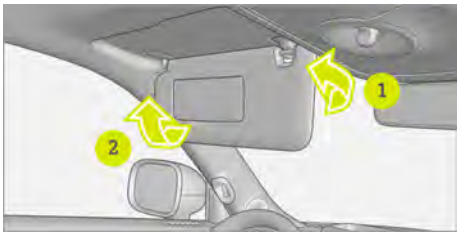
- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Driver-side outside mirror tilt-down while reversing* to turn on/off the driver-side outside mirror tilt-down while reversing function.
- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Passenger-side outside mirror tilt-down while reversing* to turn on/off the passenger-side outside mirror tilt-down while reversing function.

When the vehicle is shifted into Reverse gear R, the exterior door mirrors will automatically tilt down, so that the driver can better observe the road condition behind.

Sun Visors

Operating the sun visors

There are sun visors above the driver's and front passenger's seat. When the sun shines on the vehicle from the front or either side of the vehicle, the sun visors can be flipped down or pulled out from the retaining clip and turned to the side to block the sunshine.



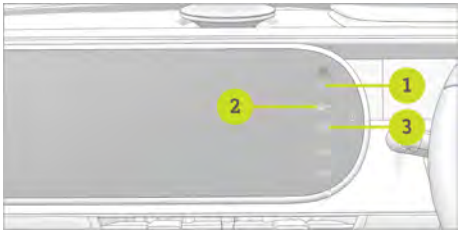
Pull the sun visor out from the fixing bracket in the arrowed direction 1 and turn it toward the door.

Once the vanity mirror cover 2 is opened, the vanity mirror lamp will be turned on.

Overview of the Climate Control

Physical buttons of the Climate Control

Enable the corresponding functions of the Climate Control by operating the physical buttons.

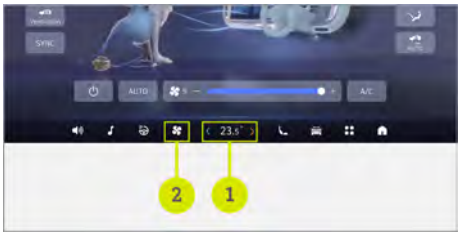


1 Turn on/off the Climate Control.
2 Turn on/off the windscreen defrosting function in the highest position.
3 Turn on/off the rear windscreen and exterior door mirror defrosting functions.

Climate bar on centre display

Common Climate Control functions can be activated through the Climate bar.

Climate bar on centre display



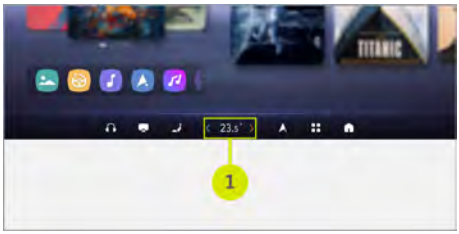
1 Driver zone temperature control.

- Tap, press and hold, or slide left and right < / > to adjust the driver zone temperature. The driver zone temperature adjustment interface will pop up at the same time. In the adjustment interface, slide the slider to quickly adjust the driver zone temperature, and tap ⊂⊃ to turn on/off the synchronization mode.
- When the Climate Control is not turned on, tap the temperature value to turn on the Climate Control; after the Climate Control is turned on, tap the temperature value again to enter the Climate interface.

2 The fan speed level of Climate Control is displayed. Tap , then the fan speed adjustment interface pops up. In this interface, slide the slider to adjust the fan speed.

ⓘ Depending on the vehicle configuration, the Climate interface will be divided into several selection areas. Tap the corresponding title to switch between tabs.

Climate bar on passenger side display (if equipped)



1 Front passenger zone temperature control.

- Tap, press and hold, or slide left and right < / > to adjust the front passenger zone temperature. The front passenger zone temperature adjustment interface will pop up at the same time. In the adjustment interface, slide the slider to quickly adjust the front passenger zone temperature, and tap ⊂⊃ to turn on/off the synchronization mode.
- When the Climate Control is not turned on, tap the temperature value to turn on the Climate Control.

Operating the Climate Control

Enabling/disabling the Climate Control

Turning on the Climate Control

- Tap to turn on the Climate Control.
- Tap to turn on the Climate Control.
- When the Climate Control is not turned on, tap the temperature value in the driver/front passenger side temperature control area to turn on the Climate Control.
- Tap , then the fan speed adjustment interface pops up and you can set the fan speed to a position other than 0 to turn on the Climate Control.
- In Climate interface, slide the fan speed slider or tap + to set the fan speed to a position other than 0 to turn on the Climate Control.
- In Climate interface, tap , , or to turn on the Climate Control.
- In Climate interface, tap A/C, AUTO, , or MAX to turn on the Climate Control.

When the Climate Control is turned on in summer, please keep all doors and windows closed. Leaving the doors and windows open for a long time will cause condensation on the interior surface.

Turning off the Climate Control

- Tap to turn off the Climate Control.
- Tap , then the fan speed adjustment interface pops up and you can set the fan speed to Level 0 to turn off the Climate Control.
- In Climate interface, slide the fan speed slider or tap − to set the fan speed to Level 0 to turn off the Climate Control.
- In Climate interface, tap to turn off the Climate Control.

Setting the Climate Control to AUTO

In AUTO mode, the interior of the vehicle will be kept at a constant temperature.

Tap AUTO to enable the AC AUTO mode.

When the climate control is enabled, it is recommended to select the AUTO mode to optimize the comfort.

Adjusting the air outlets

Enter the Climate interface and adjust the air outlets through the icons on the Climate interface:

- Windscreen air outlet.
- Panel outlet.
- Floor outlet.

You can select multiple air flow directions at the same time, such as setting the windscreen and floor air flows at the same time.

Setting the recirculation mode

Tap to switch to Recirculation/Fresh air/Auto mode according to your needs.

If the recirculation mode is enabled in winter, the windows are prone to get foggy. Auto mode is recommended.

Front windscreen defrosting

Tap the button in the physical button area on the centre display to enable the front windscreen defrosting function to remove the ice or frost on the front windscreen and windows quickly.

WARNING

For safety, make sure that there is no ice slag, snow or water condensation on the front windscreen. It is very important. Otherwise, the vision can be blocked and accidents may occur.

Rear windscreen defrosting

Tap the button in the physical button area of the centre display to enable the rear windscreen defrosting function, then the defroster starts to remove the frost on the rear windscreen and exterior door mirrors.

The indicator lamp on the button comes on when this function is enabled. After a while, the function will be disabled

automatically and then the indicator lamp on the button will go out.

WARNING

For safety, make sure that there is no ice slag, snow or water condensation on the front windscreen. It is very important. Otherwise, the vision can be blocked and accidents may occur.

Enabling/disabling the steering wheel heating

Enter the seat interface:

- Tap > *Ventilation/Heating*, and repeatedly tap the button on the steering wheel model to cycle through the heating levels. In this way, the user can select the heating level as needed.

You can also control the steering wheel heating function by voice.

Climate Setting

Tap to open the Climate Setting interface.

Interior Overheating Protection

When the function is turned on, after the vehicle is locked, if the system recognises that the inside temperature is too high, the cabin will be automatically cooled down.

After a single vehicle usage cycle (normal locking is one cycle) runs continuously for 24 hours, this function will automatically turn off and continue to turn on in the next vehicle usage cycle. This function cannot be activated if the SOC is lower than 20%.

Window Auto-Close Reminder

Turn on/off the Window Auto-Close Reminder.

Auto Air Purification

Turn on/off the Auto Air Purification.

Operating the Climate Control

Climate interface on centre display

The functions of the Climate on the centre display can be found in 1 to 3.



MAX Turn on/off the A/C Max Cooling.

A/C Turn on/off the A/C Cooling.

AUTO Turn on/off the A/C AUTO mode (→ Page 95).

ECO Turn on/off the A/C ECO mode.

Set the air outlets to the windscreen mode.

Set the air outlets to the panel mode.

Set the air outlets to the floor mode.

Turn on/off the Climate Control (→ Page 95).

Switch between Recirculation/Auto/Fresh Air modes.

Turn on/off the A/C ventilation function for natural ventilation.

Turn on/off the synchronization mode.

Open the Settings interface (→ Page 96).

Interior air quality system (if equipped)

Air quality system (AQS) consists of a multi-layer filter, an AQS sensor, and a PM2.5 sensor. The filter can remove smoke and solid particles entering the air inlet, reducing odours and pollutants entering the vehicle.

The AQS sensor can monitor the air quality outside the vehicle. When pollutants are

detected, the air inlet for fresh air mode will be closed, and the recirculation mode will be turned on for the cabin to prevent the air inside from being polluted.

The PM2.5 sensor monitors the solid particles in the inside air. When it detects that the particle pollution in the inside air is serious, the Climate Control will be turned on to reduce the inside pollution quickly.

1. After the Climate Control is turned on, tap the temperature value on the bottom bar of the centre display to enter the Climate interface.
2. Tap **Purify Air** to check the current PM 2.5 inside the vehicle and the AQS level outside the vehicle.
3. Tap to turn on the intelligent fresh air mode.
4. Tap to turn on the deodorization function.

In order to ensure the Climate Control and air filter work normally, be sure to use the A/C filter element. During operation, always ensure that the A/C filter element is properly installed. It is recommended that the maintenance be carried out at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Air outlets

WARNING Risk of burns or frostbite due to insufficient distance from the air outlet

The air outlet may blow out overheated or freezing air.

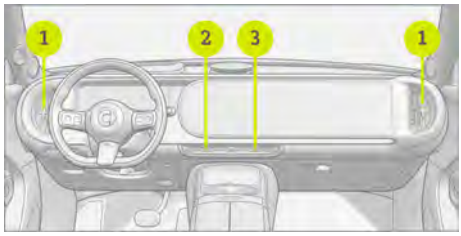
This may cause burns or frostbite to people near the air outlet.

- ► Make sure that the occupants inside keep a sufficient distance from the air outlets.
- ► If necessary, guide the air flow to other areas in the vehicle.

To ensure that fresh air enters the vehicle through the air outlets, observe the following:

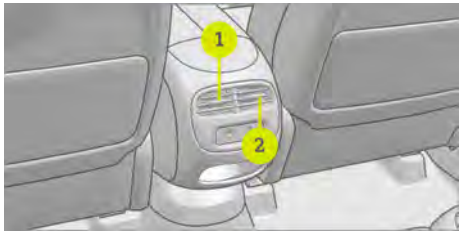
- Ensure that the air outlets and ventilation grille inside the vehicle are unblocked.
- Ensure the air inlet is free of dirt such as ice, snow and leaves.

Adjusting the front air outlets



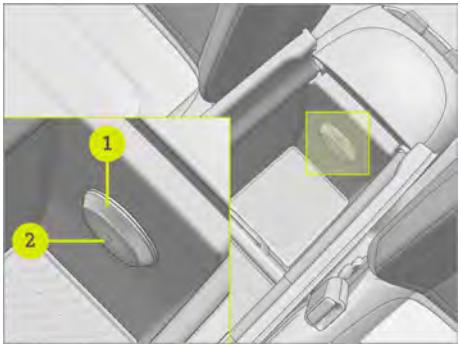
1. **Adjusting the side air outlets**: Move the slider 1 up, down, left and right. Turn the slider 1 down to the maximum position to close the air outlet.
2. **Adjusting the left centre air outlet**: Move the slider 2 up, down, left and right. Turn the slider 2 to the rightmost position to close the air outlet.
3. **Adjusting the right centre air outlet**: Move the slider 3 up, down, left and right. Slide the slider 3 to the leftmost position to close the air outlet.

Adjusting the rear air outlets



1. **Adjusting the left air outlet**: Slide the slider 1 up, down, left and right. Turn the slider 1 to the rightmost position to close the air outlet.
2. **Adjusting the right air outlet**: Slide the slider 2 up, down, left and right. Slide the slider 2 to the leftmost position to close the air outlet.

Armrest box ventilation



1 Air outlet adjusting switch
2 Air outlets

1. Open the armrest box.
2. **Opening/closing the air outlet**: Turn the roller 1 clockwise/counterclockwise to open/close the air outlet.

The switch status can be judged by the letters on the air outlet. ON facing up means the air outlet is open, and OFF facing up means the air outlet is closed.

To use the armrest box air outlet function, first enable the climate control.

Charging the High Voltage Battery

Notes on charging the high voltage battery

Note the following when charging the high voltage battery:

- Check the charging cable before charging the vehicle. Never use a charging cable with damaged skin or sheath.
- Before charging, ensure that there is no water or foreign object in the charging port of the vehicle, power supply equipment and charging connector, and the metal terminal is not rusted or corroded.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment. Avoid rain and water immersion and stay away from fire sources.
- Never disassemble or modify the charging equipment or related ports without authorization.
- Choose a dry and ventilated environment. Never use the charging equipment in an environment where gasoline, paint, flammables or explosives are used or stored.
- Never use the charging cable in a dark or humid place.
- Never allow children to charge the vehicle.
- Never touch the charging port.
- It is not recommended to charge the vehicle in rainy days if there is no awning.
- In case of sudden weather changes (gale, rain, snow and thunderstorm) during charging outdoors, check whether the charging gun is well connected and remains dry. During thunder and lightning, never touch the charging cable or the vehicle body.
- During charging, in case of moisture near the charging port, first ensure it is safe, then switch off the power supply and disconnect the charging gun (never touch the metal part of the charging socket with your hand or other parts of your body, to avoid accidents). If necessary, use insulated gloves and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection as soon as possible.
- If the vehicle emits peculiar smell during charging, stop charging immediately.
- During charging, never squeeze the charging cable.
- After charging, never disconnect the charging connector when your hands are wet or you are standing in water.
- Ensure that the charging connector is disconnected from the charging port of the vehicle before driving.

WARNING Risk of fatal injury from damaged components

At charging stations with a pre-installed charging cable:

- **Visually check the charging equipment for obvious faults, such as extensive damage to the housing or charging cable.**
- **Always observe the safety notes on the charging station.**

At charging stations without a pre-installed charging cable:

- For safety reasons, only use charging cables that have been tested and approved by the manufacturer for charging the high voltage battery in an electric vehicle.
- Never use damaged charging cables.
- Never stretch the charging cable.
- If an adapter is needed, only use adapters that have been tested and approved as suitable for charging electric vehicle high voltage batteries. Observe adapter manufacturer's operation and safety instructions during operation.

NOTE Accelerated aging of the high voltage battery due to frequent charging to full

Do not charge the high voltage battery to full frequently.

- ► For vehicles equipped with the ternary lithium-ion high voltage battery, charge the high voltage battery to 80% when possible.
- ► For vehicles equipped with the lithium iron phosphate high voltage battery, fully charge the high voltage battery to 100% at least once a week.

The following methods can be used to reduce the power consumption of the vehicle:

- Drive gently.
- Use the electrical equipment reasonably.
- Follow the maintenance schedule.

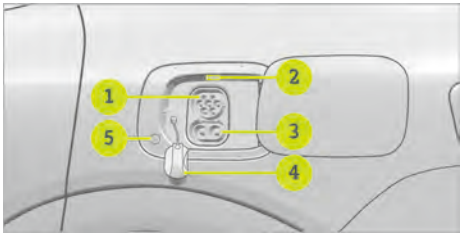
The charging time of the high voltage battery may vary throughout its service life.

ⓘ You can check the state of charge on the centre display.

ⓘ If the AC charging time of the high voltage battery is longer than the normal charging time, check the maximum AC charging current setting in the menu of the centre display.

Vehicle charging ports and charging methods

The high voltage battery can be charged with an AC or DC power supply.



1 Charging socket for AC charging.
2 Charging port light.
1 3 Charging socket for DC charging.
4 Charging socket cap.
5 Charging port indicator light.

Charging options of high voltage battery:

- Charging through regenerative braking during driving.
- Charging with an AC power supply.
- Charging with a DC power supply.

Charging port light

The charging port light turns on when any of the following conditions is met:

- Open the charging port cover.
- Press the charging port cover switch (i. e., press the marked area on the charging port cover).
- The charging port cover is open and the vehicle is unlocked.

The charging port light turns off when any of the following conditions is met:

- Close the charging port cover.
- The charging port cover light turns on for 5 minutes.
- The charging port cover is open and the vehicle is locked.

Limitations of the system

The power output of the high voltage battery can be affected by the following factors:

- High or low ambient temperature outside the vehicle.
- No charging for a long time.

The charging time of the high voltage battery may vary with the following factors:

- High or low ambient temperature outside the vehicle.
- No charging for a long time.
- The maximum available charging current of the charging facility.
- Charging settings of the vehicle.

Travel Schedule

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

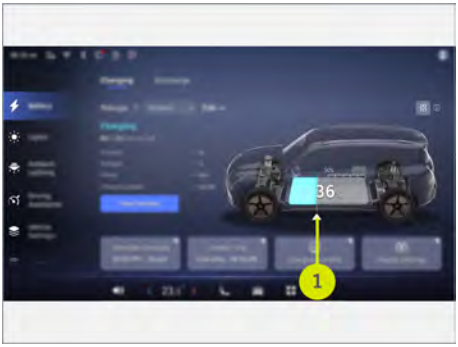
You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Energy Management interface:

- Tap > *Energy Management* to enter the Energy Management interface, then you can set the Charging Schedule and Comfort Travel.

Charging Schedule



The user can set the Charging Schedule on the centre display, and slide the slider left or right to set the target SOC. Based on the start time and end time of charging set by the user and the set target SOC, the battery can be charged to the target SOC.

In order to ensure that the vehicle can obtain sufficient electric energy before traveling, plug in the charging gun and activate the charging pile timely.

1. Slide 1 left or right to set the target SOC.
2. Tap **Charging Schedule** and enter the time setting interface of the Charging Schedule.
3. Tap the master switch of Charging Schedule to turn on Charging Schedule, then the user can set the start time and end time of Charging Schedule as needed and tap **Save** to save them. If the **Charging Ends after Reaching Target SOC** is switched on, charging will continue when the high voltage battery has not reached the target SOC at the set end time of the Charging Schedule. In this case, the charging process will continue to reach the target SOC before ending.
4. If you need to turn off the Charging Schedule, tap **Charging Schedule** to enter the time setting interface of Charging Schedule and tap the master switch of Charging Schedule to turn off the Charging Schedule.

Comfort Travel

The user can set the time of Travel Schedule on the centre display. After the setting is successful, the vehicle will turn on the battery temperature adjustment and cab temperature control in advance according to the set travel time.

1. Tap **Comfort Travel** to enter the setting interface of Comfort Travel.
2. Tap the master switch of Comfort Travel to turn on the Comfort Travel, then the user can set the time of Travel Schedule as needed and tap **Save** to save it. If the **Battery Preheating** switch is turned on, the system will use the energy supplied by the AC charging pile to adjust the temperature of the high voltage battery 1 hour before the trip to ensure that the high voltage battery has good performance during the trip. If the **Climate Control Schedule** switch is turned on, the system will turn on the Climate Control and adjust the inside temperature to about 22°C 15 minutes before the time of Travel Schedule.
3. If you need to turn off the Comfort Travel, tap **Comfort Travel** to enter the setting interface of Comfort Travel, and tap the master switch of Comfort Travel to turn off the Comfort Travel.

Charging port indicator lamp

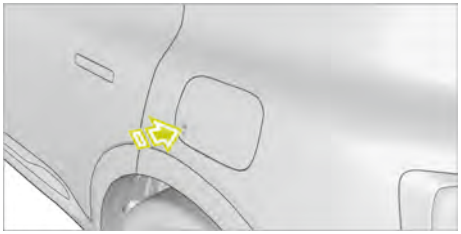
Description of indicator lamp status

Status	Indicator lamp colour
Off	White
Heating	Yellow
Schedule Charging	Blue
Charging	Flashing in green
Charging completed	Green
Faulty	Red
Discharging	Flashing in blue

Opening and closing the charging port cover

Opening the charging port cover

You can open the charging port cover by the following methods:



- After unlocking the vehicle, press the marking area of the charging port cover to open the charging port cover.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Quick Controls* > to open the charging port cover.

To avoid the charging port cover being triggered by mistake during car washing, please turn on the Car Wash mode before washing the vehicle.

Closing the charging port cover

You can close the charging port cover by the following methods:



- Press the charging indicator lamp 1 to close the charging port cover.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Quick Controls* > to close the charging port cover.
- When the charging port cover is in the open state, use external force to push the charging port cover in the closing direction, then the charging port cover will be closed automatically. This operation has anti-play protection. When this operation is performed 10 times within one minute, the anti-play protection will be triggered, and the charging port cover will stop responding to this operation for 120 seconds and thereafter automatically resume the response.

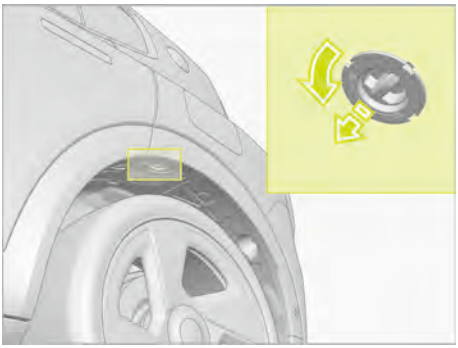
When the vehicle is locked, if the charging port cover is open and the charging gun is not connected, the charging port cover will automatically close.

When the vehicle starts running, the charging port cover will automatically close.

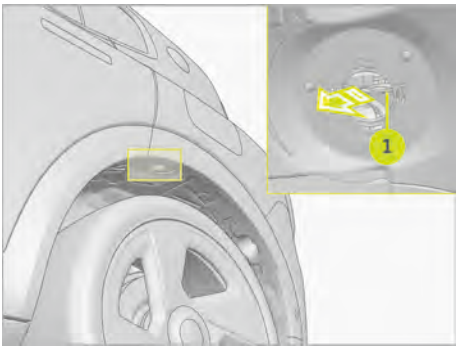
After the charging port cover is open, if the charging gun is not connected in more than about 120 seconds, the charging port cover will automatically close.

Opening the charging port cover in mechanical way

If the SOC is too low or the charging port cover lock is damaged, you can open the charging port cover by the mechanical method:



1. Turn the trim cover outward counterclockwise and remove it.



2. Gently pull the unlocking cable 1 to unlock, and pull open the charging port cover.

NOTE

To unlock, pull the unlocking cable gently instead of violently, so as to avoid damaging the internal locking mechanism.

Start charging

WARNING Risk of injury due to charging with damaged charging equipment

If charging with damaged charging cable, vehicle charging port or power supply socket, you could suffer an electric shock.

- ► Only use an undamaged charging cable.
- ► Avoid mechanical damage that may be caused by squashing, shearing or driving over the cable.
- ► Have a damaged vehicle charging gun replaced at a smart Authorized Service Partner as soon as possible.
- ► Never connect the charging cable to a damaged vehicle charging port.

NOTE Charging cable heating up

Charging cables may heat up within a permissible limit during the charging process.

Observe the permissible limits, so as to make sure:

- that the power equipment and the charging cable are not damaged.
- Follow the operating instructions of charging cable and control device on the charging cable.

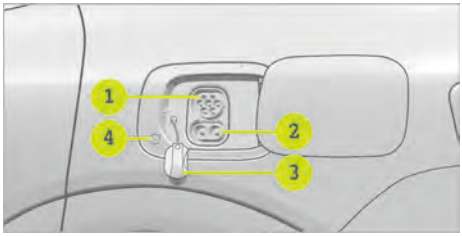
► In case of overheating of the charging cable or the charging gun cable plug, have the equipment of the main power supply checked.

NOTE Damaged or contaminated charging port

- ► Keep the charging port cover and socket cap closed when not in use. The charging port can be protected against contamination and damage.
- ► Check and confirm the charging socket cap is closed properly before closing the charging port cover. Otherwise, the charging port cover may be damaged and unable to be opened again.

Requirements for charging:

- The vehicle is in P gear.
- The charging port cover is unlocked.
- The drive system is not started.
- The charging cable is not stretched tightly.



AC charging:

1. Open the charging port cover.
2. Plug the charging gun in the charging port 1 of the vehicle to the stop position, and turn on the charging pile, then the vehicle starts charging and the indicator lamp 4 flashes in green.

DC charging:

1. Open the charging port cover.
2. Remove the charging port cover 3.
3. Plug the charging gun in the charging ports 1 and 2 of the vehicle to the stop positions, and turn on the charging pile, then the vehicle starts charging and the indicator lamp 4 flashes in green.

When the charging starts, the driver information display indicates the SOC and the charging estimate. Charging estimate means the estimated SOC at the set departure time after charging is started, or the time required to charge the high voltage battery to a set SOC.

If the charging cable is connected to the vehicle, the drive system cannot be started and the vehicle cannot move.

When the vehicle starts, a charging indicator appears next to the battery level on the driver information display. Be aware of any information displayed on the driver information display.

Depending on the temperature, you may hear the fan and the battery cooling system turn on during the charging process.

If the vehicle is left unused for an extensive period of time and is connected to a power source, the charging system will charge the vehicle automatically as needed.

At low temperature and low SOC, DC charging may be disabled to protect the lifespan of the power battery. In this case, try to charge the vehicle with a AC charging pile, and if AC charging fails, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

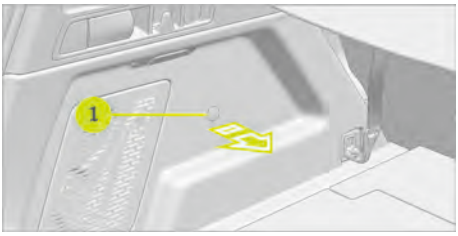
Stop charging

To stop charging:

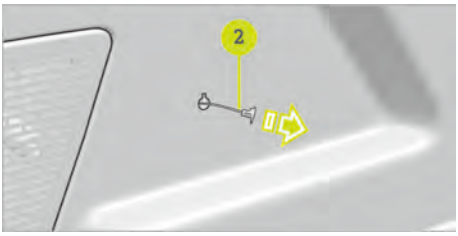
1. Stop charging through the centre display or the charging pile.
2. Remove the charging gun from the charging socket.
3. Put back the charging socket cap and close the charging port cover.

Unlocking the charging gun in an emergency

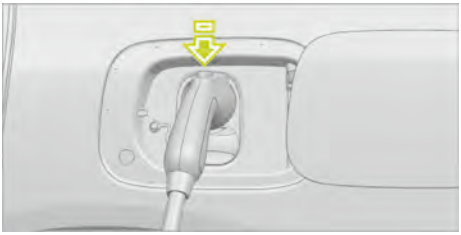
1. Open the liftgate.



2. Pull out the emergency unlocking handle 1.



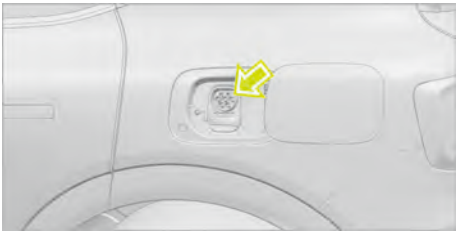
3. Pull the emergency unlocking handle 2 to unlock the charging port.



4. Press the button on the charging gun and pull out the charging gun.

Vehicle Discharging

Location of vehicle discharging port



Location of discharging port of the vehicle.

To use the discharging port of the vehicle, it needs to be connected to a discharging gun.

Notes on vehicle discharging

WARNING Risk of accident caused by vehicle discharging

Never use the vehicle discharging functions under the following circumstances:

- The discharging cable is bundled up, causing overheat.
- The discharging gun or equipment is damaged, which can lead to electric leakage or personal injury.
- Unsafe environments, such as rain or snow.
- The power limit of the discharging function is exceeded.

Notes on safety:

- ▶ The combined power of all electric loads must not exceed the rated power of 3.3 kW.
- ▶ If the discharging gun is moist, stop using it immediately. Regularly remove foreign objects, such as dust.

If the state of charge is less than 20%, the vehicle stops supplying power automatically.

Vehicle discharging

The vehicle can be used as a power source for household appliances such as light, low-power oven and microwave oven.

Enter the Energy Management interface:

- Tap > *Energy Management* to enter the Energy Management interface.
- When the discharging gun is connected, the system automatically enters the Energy Management interface.
- **Type I:** After plugging in the discharging gun, tap **Activate discharging** to enable the discharging function.
- **Type II:** After the discharging gun is plugged in, the discharging function will be enabled automatically.
- You can also view the discharging logs.

Slide the dotted line on the car model and select the target SOC for terminating discharging. In the discharging process, if the high voltage battery reaches the set target SOC, it will automatically stop the discharging process.

Driving

Notes on electric vehicle

WARNING Risk of chemical burns and poisoning from damaged high voltage battery

If the housing of the high voltage battery has been damaged, electrolyte and gases may leak out.

- ► Prevent battery acid from contacting with the skin, eyes or clothing.
- ► Immediately rinse electrolyte splashes off with water and seek medical attention straight away.

WARNING Risk of explosion from excessive internal pressure of the high voltage battery

In the event of a vehicle fire, the internal pressure of the high voltage battery could exceed the critical value. In this case, flammable gas may escape and may be ignited.

- ► Stop the charging process immediately in case of unusual odours, smoke or burn marks.
- ► Keep away from dangerous areas immediately, and call the fire service.

WARNING Risk of accident due to high voltage battery overheating

If the driver information display shows “Vehicle battery overheating, high and acute risk of fire. Check status of car. If inside the car, stop and exit the car immediately and call emergency services.”, please be sure to follow the instructions on the screen, leave the vehicle as soon as possible, and seek help.

Observe the following notes on vehicle noise emission and Acoustic Vehicle Alert System:

- The vehicle is equipped with a pure electric drive system, which generates significantly less noise when compared with gas powered vehicles. For this reason, the vehicle is equipped with Acoustic Vehicle Alert System.
- When the vehicle is moving forward at a speed below about 20 km/h (13 mph), or reversing at any speed, the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System will remind pedestrians. This helps other road users (particularly pedestrians and cyclists) to hear your vehicle better.
- When the vehicle moves at a speed over 20 km/h (13 mph), the Low Speed Alarm turns off gradually.
- Despite the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System, in some cases, pedestrians or other vehicles may not be able to hear your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to drive safely.
- Acoustic Vehicle Alert System will be turned off when the vehicle is stationary (not in R gear).

Notes on driving

WARNING Risk of accident due to objects in the driver's footwell

Objects in the driver's footwell may impede pedal travel or block a pressed pedal.

This jeopardises the operating and road safety of the vehicle.

- ► Stow all objects in the vehicle securely so that they cannot get into the driver's footwell.
- ► Always fix the floor mats securely in order to make sure that there is always sufficient room for the pedals.
- ► Never use loose floor mats, nor place a floor mat on another one.

WARNING Risk of accident due to unsuitable footwear

Operating the pedals may be impaired by wearing unsuitable footwear, for example:

- Platform shoes
- High-heeled shoes
- Slippers

► Always wear suitable footwear when driving so that you can operate the pedals safely.

WARNING Risk of accident or injury due to driving under the influence of alcohol and drugs

Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs is very dangerous. Even small amount of alcohol or drugs may affect your reaction, perception, and judgment.

The likelihood of a serious or even fatal accident greatly increases when you drive after drinking alcohol or using drugs.

► Please do not drive after drinking alcohol or using drugs, and do not allow others who have been drinking alcohol or using drugs to drive your vehicle.

WARNING Risk of accident due to the brake system overheating

If you leave your foot on the brake pedal when driving, the brake system may overheat.

This increases the braking distance and the brake system may even fail.

► Never use the brake pedal as a footrest.

► Never press the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal at the same time while driving.

WARNING Vehicle damage due to fail to observe the maximum allowable height

If the height of the vehicle is greater than the maximum allowable height (road, garage, etc.), the roof and other parts of the vehicle may be damaged.

► Observe the height instructions on road signs or other signs.

► If the vehicle height is greater than the maximum permitted height, do not enter.

► When using additional roof equipment, pay attention to the total height of the vehicle.

Notes on driving under roof load, trailer or full load conditions

During driving with loaded roof rack, a coupled trailer or full load, the driving and steering characteristics of the vehicle may change. The following shall be kept in mind:

- Never exceed the maximum allowable roof load capacity and the traction capacity of the vehicle. Technical data in this manual shall be followed.
- Distribute the roof load evenly and place heavier loads at the bottom.
- Drive carefully and avoid sudden starts, sudden braking, sudden steering and fast turning.

Notes on driving on wet and slippery roads

Once there is water on the road, hydroplaning may occur. In case of heavy rain or other weathers that may result in hydroplaning, observe the following precautions:

- Reduce the speed
- Avoid sections of ruts
- Avoid sudden turning
- Brake gently

Notes on braking on roads with salt

The braking effect is limited on roads with salt:

- As a layer of salt accumulates on the brake discs and linings, the braking distance will increase significantly or the vehicle can only brake on one side.

Maintain a longer safe distance from the front vehicle.

Prevent salt build-up:

- Apply the brake pedal frequently and pay attention to the traffic conditions.

Wading

WARNING Risk of accident due to fording

Never attempt to pass through deep or moving water. Failure to observe this instruction may result in loss control of vehicle personal injury or death.

Driving through a flooded area may cause vehicle damage. Check the water depth before driving through a flooded area. It is strictly prohibited to wade through a flooded area with water surface higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body.

When driving through flooded areas, drive slowly and do not stop. Braking performance and ground grip may be limited. On the premise of safety, the following actions must be taken after wading:

- Press the brake pedal gently to dry the brake and check whether the brake works properly.
- Turn the steering wheel to check whether the power steering system works properly.

Check the functions of the following components:

- Horn
- Exterior lamps

Winter driving

To ensure safe driving under severe cold conditions, the following are recommended:

- Ensure the high voltage battery is in good condition and fully charged. Cold weather places high demand on the high voltage battery and could cause the battery capacity to be reduced.
- Use winter windscreen washer fluid to prevent the washer system from malfunctioning due to freezing.
- Install winter tyres with sufficient tread depth. The rubber compound contained in summer tyres and all-season tyres becomes hard at lower temperatures, reducing the ground grip.
- Reduce the vehicle speed and avoid hard braking and rapid acceleration on slippery roads.

In case of snow and ice on the vehicle:

When snow and ice occurs on the vehicle, remove the snow from the vehicle body and remove the ice from the windscreen with a snow scrapper, and defrost the vehicle fully before driving to prevent the driver's vision from being adversely affected. If any of the door handles are frozen, do not try to release it with tools or large force. It is recommended that you deactivate the exterior door mirror autofold function, as the folding and unfolding motion can be obstructed by snow and ice.

Recommended practices

Range

Many factors contribute to the range of the electric vehicle, and the ability of achieving the optimal range varies with the driving circumstances and conditions.

NOTE

The remaining range on the driver information display is merely an estimate, and it may not account for factors such as driving styles and environmental conditions.

Factors effecting energy consumption include, but are not limited to:

- Vehicle speed: Higher speeds increase the energy consumption for the vehicle to overcome wind resistance.
- Trip conditions: The vehicle consumes some energy to maintain the temperatures of the cabin and high voltage

battery within appropriate ranges, and short trips and heavy traffic will increase the average energy consumption.

- Road conditions: When driving uphill, the vehicle consumes more energy; when driving downhill, the regenerative braking system recovers some of the consumed energy.
- Cargo load: Heavier vehicle weight increases the energy consumption to propel the vehicle.
- Wheels and tyres: The weight of the wheels and tyres, the design of the tyres, and the tyre pressure can all affect the rolling resistance of the vehicle.
- Climate Control: Heating or cooling the cabin with the Climate Control will consume energy of the high voltage battery.
- Add-on accessories: Installing add-on accessories such as roof rack can increase the drag coefficient, thus increasing the energy consumption at high vehicle speeds.
- External environment: External environments such as strong wind, extreme cold and extreme heat can increase the energy consumption of the vehicle.

Hints to optimize the range:

Before driving

- Power on the vehicle to precondition the cabin and high voltage battery to appropriate temperatures.
- Check tyres for wear and maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Lighten the vehicle by removing unnecessary cargo.

During driving

- Drive moderately and keep a sufficient distance from other vehicles to minimize the need of braking.
- Limit the use of the A/C. In cold weather, only use the seat heating and steering wheel heating functions if possible, as heating the cabin will consume a significant amount of energy.
- Keep all windows closed during driving.

When parked

- Park the vehicle in a temperature modulated garage if possible.

The power meter on the driver information display indicates the current energy consumption and the regenerative braking level.

Preserving your high voltage battery

The efficiency and capacity of the high voltage battery degrade gradually as the high voltage battery ages due to its physical nature, and some circumstances could accelerate this process. In order to maintain the efficiency of the high voltage battery and prolong its service life, the following practices are recommended:

Charging

- According to the trip needs, set a reasonable charging mode.
- Do not allow the high voltage battery to be fully discharged. If possible, keep the SOC of the high voltage battery above 20% at all times.
- When time allows, choose regular AC charging.

Long term parking

- Maintain the SOC of the high voltage battery within 50% – 80% when parking for an extended period of time.
- For vehicles parked for more than 3 months, it is recommended to perform a charge-discharge maintenance every 3 months: charging the high-voltage battery to 100% SOC and then discharging it to between 50% and 80% SOC before returning to normal parking conditions.
- Run the vehicle for a few minutes once every 4 weeks.
- Check the SOC of the high voltage battery or check the charging connection regularly. If the SOC is low, charge the vehicle immediately.

Temperature

- The optimal operating temperature of the high voltage battery is within 10°C–30°C. If possible, it is recommended that the vehicle be parked in a place with suitable ambient temperature.

- The vehicle shall not be exposed to the environment with the temperature below –30°C or above 60°C for more than 24 hours.
- If the vehicle is placed in an environment with extreme outside temperatures for more than 24 hours, for example, below –30°C or above 60°C, the charging and discharging efficiency of the high voltage battery will be seriously affected. It is recommended that the vehicle be not exposed to an environment with temperature below –30°C or above 60°C for more than 24 hours.

Starting the vehicle

WARNING Risk of injury due to vehicle settings adjustment while the vehicle is running

You could lose control of the vehicle particularly in the following situations:

- You adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel or mirrors while the vehicle is running.
- You fasten the seat belt while the vehicle is running.

► Before starting the vehicle, adjust the driver's seat, head restraint, steering wheel and mirrors and wear the seat belt correctly.

1. After the vehicle is unlocked and any door is opened, the windows and multimedia can be used normally.
2. Press the brake pedal, and shift into D or R gear, then the indicator lamp READY on the driver information display will come on, and the vehicle will run normally.

NOTE Check driving conditions before starting the vehicle

► Check and confirm the brake pedal can be pressed to the bottom before starting the vehicle.
► Check whether the surrounding environment meets the conditions for starting the vehicle. If not, do not start the vehicle.
► Ensure the key is in the vehicle. If you use an NFC key, ensure it is in the sensing area.

Using the NFC key to start the vehicle

If you use the NFC key to start the vehicle, please follow the steps below:

Type I:



Type II:



1. Place the NFC key in the sensing area 1.
2. Press the brake pedal, and shift into D or R gear, then the indicator lamp READY on the driver information display will come on, and the vehicle will run normally.

NOTE

- After starting the vehicle with the NFC card key, remove the NFC card key from the wireless charging area to prevent it from being burnt.
- During wireless charging of mobile phone, do not put the NFC card key under the mobile phone to prevent it from being burnt.

After the vehicle is unlocked with the NFC key, it can be started directly by sitting in the driver's seat within a short period of time. Otherwise, the NFC key must be placed in the sensing area to start the vehicle.

The location of the NFC key's sensing area varies depending on the vehicle configuration and market. Please determine the location of the sensing area based on the NFC sign in the sensing area. The actual vehicle shall prevail.

To ensure driving safety, if the driver temporarily exits the vehicle or the driver's door is opened, the NFC key must be placed in the sensing area to restart the vehicle.

Powering off the vehicle

1. Ensure the vehicle is stationary.
2. Shift to P **P** gear.
3. The driver carrying the key exits the vehicle from the driver's door.
4. Lock the vehicle with the key and power off the vehicle.

Under some operation modes, the vehicle power cannot be switched off by the operations above. The operation mode needs to be turned off prior.

In addition, when the vehicle is in **P** gear, you can also power off the vehicle by the following methods:

1. Power off the vehicle through the centre display:
   - Enter the Settings interface: Tap *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Power Off*, then a power-off prompt window will be displayed. Tap **Confirm** to power off the vehicle.
   - Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display, and tap , then a power-off prompt window will be displayed. Tap **Confirm** to power off the vehicle.
2. When there is nobody in the vehicle and all doors are closed, the vehicle will be powered off automatically.

The vehicle power will be switched off after tapping Power Off. If a restart is needed, press the brake pedal.

Shifting by column-mounted electronic shifter

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to children left unattended in the vehicle

If children are left unattended in the vehicle, they could in particular:

- Open doors, thereby endangering other persons or road users.
- Get out and be struck by oncoming traffic.
- Operate vehicle equipment and become trapped.

In addition, children could also set the vehicle in motion, by in particular:

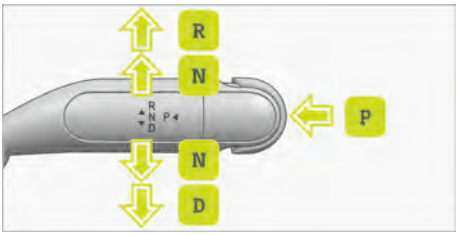
- Releasing the parking brake
- Shifting the gear
- Starting the vehicle

► Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

► When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.

► Keep the key out of the reach of children.

The driver information display indicates the current gear during shifting.



P Parking

R Reverse

N Neutral

D Drive

Shifting to P gear P

Press the brake pedal and press the button P, then the driver information display indicates P.

Observe the notes on parking (→ Page 117).

The vehicle can be shifted into Parking P gear if the following conditions are met:

- When the vehicle is stationary in D, R or N gear.
- If the vehicle is stationary and Auto Hold is not activated, the vehicle will automatically shift into P gear when the driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the driver's door to exit.
- When the vehicle is stationary and Auto Hold is activated (Auto Hold active indicator lamp comes on), if the driver unfastens the seat belt or opens the driver's door, or Auto Hold is activated for 10 minutes, the vehicle will automatically shift into P gear.

Shifting to R gear R

Press the brake pedal and push the shift lever upward to past the first resistance point, then the driver information display indicates R gear.

The vehicle can be shifted into Reverse R gear if the following conditions are met:

- When the vehicle is stationary in D or P gear.

NOTE

Even if the vehicle is in P gear, if the Electronic Parking Brake is manually released, there is still a risk of rolling down.

Shifting to N gear N

Press the brake pedal, push the shift lever upward or downward to the first resistance point and hold it until the driver information display indicates N gear. At this time, release the brake pedal, then the vehicle can be moved freely.

NOTE Damage to the vehicle if it rolls down

When the vehicle is in N gear, it may roll down a slope or similar roads.

► Always properly secure the vehicle to prevent rolling down.

Shifting to D gear D

Press the brake pedal and push the shift lever downward to past the first resistance point. The driver information display indicates D gear.

s-Pedal

WARNING Possible risks caused by using s-Pedal

► The system is a driver assistance function. It can never replace attention and judgement of the driver, nor can it eliminate the need of pressing the brake pedal. The system will not automatically brake. Please press the brake pedal when necessary.

► You are always responsible for maintaining a safe distance and speed and abiding by all applicable traffic laws and regulations.

With s-Pedal, it is possible to only use the accelerator pedal to accelerate and brake. Press the accelerator pedal for acceleration. Release the accelerator pedal and put your foot on it for slow deceleration. Take

your foot off the accelerator pedal for a complete stop.

During driving with s-Pedal enabled, the s-Pedal indicator lamp on the driver information display comes on.

When s-Pedal is disabled and the accelerator pedal is not pressed, the vehicle will travel at a speed of 7 km/h (5 mph). After s-Pedal is enabled, the vehicle will coast and then stop completely, and the Auto Hold will be automatically activated.

Limitations of s-Pedal

In case of any of the following circumstances, s-Pedal is not available:

- The vehicle is in R gear.
- The vehicle is shifted into a wrong gear, for example, to P gear or N gear while driving forward.
- The driver presses the brake pedal.
- The vehicle is running on a steep slope.
- Hill Descent Control is active.
- Parking Assist System is active.
- Adaptive Cruise Control is active.
- Lane Centring Control is active.
- Front Collision Mitigation is triggered.
- Automatic Parking Assist is activated.
- The drive mode is switched to the Sport mode, Off-road (if equipped) or BRABUS mode (if equipped).

Enabling/disabling s-Pedal

- Tap > *s-Pedal* to enable/disable s-Pedal.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *s-Pedal* to turn on/off s-Pedal.

When s-Pedal is enabled, the brake lamps will come on when the accelerator pedal is released for deceleration.

When s-Pedal is enabled, Auto Hold will be automatically activated when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle decelerates to a standstill.

Drive Modes

Overview of drive modes

You can select the drive mode (→ Page 115) through the centre display, or tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* on the centre display to set the drive mode.

Depending on the drive mode selected, the following vehicle characteristics could change:

- Drive
- Steering
- Drive mode switching sound effect
- Air suspension damping (if equipped)
- Air suspension height (if equipped)

ECO mode

- Energy efficient and environmental driving experience. Driving in this mode saves more energy and is more efficient.

Comfort mode

- Standard mode for daily use. The Comfort mode is on by default when the vehicle is started, providing the most comfortable driving experience.

Sport mode

- A mode with better dynamic experience and better sports characteristics. The acceleration response is faster, providing a high-performance driving experience.

BRABUS mode (if equipped)

- BRABUS mode puts the vehicle in the best response and performance mode, and is optimized for the highest performance, so that the vehicle gets better sportiness and dynamic response when accelerating.

Off-Road – Snow mode (if equipped)

- As an exclusive mode for AWD model, the Snow mode is for driving on snowy roads, and enables change of the vehicle's power output to reduce skidding on icy surfaces.

Off-Road – Sand mode (if equipped)

- It is an exclusive AWD mode. When driving on sandy ground, switch to sand mode, then the Electronic Stability Control will adjust the driving force distribution and wheel slippage control according to the vehicle state to restore the stability and traction of the vehicle.

Off-Road – Mud mode (if equipped)

- It is an exclusive AWD mode. When driving on muddy ground, switch to mud mode, then the Electronic Stability Control will lower its level to prevent excessive intervention on wheel slippage to ensure the vehicle better adapts to road changes to maintain continuous power output.

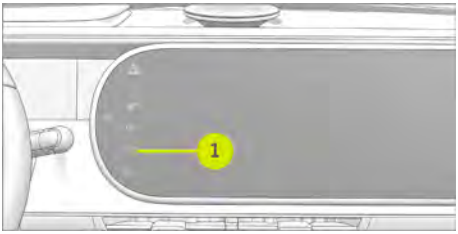
Off-Road – Adaptive mode (if equipped)

- As an exclusive mode for AWD model, this mode enables automatic adjustment of off-road driving modes based on vehicle logic and road characteristics to ensure a more convenient off-road experience.

Off-Road – Rock mode (if equipped)

- As an exclusive mode for AWD model, the Rock mode is for driving on rocky roads, and enables change of vehicle's power output mode to reduce slippage and improve the trafficability on rocky roads.

Selecting a drive mode



1 Drive mode button.

Tap the button 1 to cycle through the following drive modes. Tap the button 1, then the drive mode list will pop up. You can also select the following drive modes from the list:

- ECO mode
- Comfort mode
- Sport mode
- BRABUS mode (if equipped)
- Off-Road (if equipped)

Off-Road mode (if equipped)

In the drive mode other than Off-Road, tap Off-Road to switch the drive mode to Off-Road.

NOTE

In Off-Road mode, the intelligent driving assistance functions will not be available (only the prompt functions are available).

When the drive mode is set to Off-Road – Adaptive/Rock mode, if the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h (31 mph) for 5 seconds, the drive mode will automatically switch to the Comfort mode.

Rocket Launch (if equipped)

WARNING Accidents and risks caused by incorrect use of Rocket Launch

▶ Rocket Launch is just a personalized drive mode and is not suitable for all situations. You are always responsible for maintaining an appropriate distance and speed and abiding by all applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Please be familiar with the operation of Rocket Launch in a closed section with good road conditions.

Please use the Rocket Launch carefully in the following situations, including but not limited to:

- When the vehicle is in this mode, the steering wheel is off-centre and the wheels are not in straight ahead positions.
- Driving on roads with accumulated water, mud, potholes, ice and snow, speed bumps or obstacles.

- Driving on sharp bends, slopes and narrow roads.
- Traffic conditions with many pedestrians, bicycles, electric bicycles or animals.
- Tunnel entrance and exit.

Enabling the Rocket Launch

- The drive mode is set to Sport or BRABUS (if equipped).
- The vehicle is stationary.
- Fasten the seat belt properly.
- Shift into D gear.
- Turn on the Rocket Launch switch:
  - Tap > *Rocket Launch* to turn on the Rocket Launch.
  - Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Rocket Launch* to turn on the Rocket Launch.
- Press the brake pedal and accelerator pedal at the same time.
- At this time, the driver information display prompts the user that the vehicle is in the Rocket Launch mode.
- Release the brake pedal according to the prompt on the driver information display and keep the accelerator pedal pressed to the bottom.

When the Rocket Launch is activated, the ambient light shows the relevant dynamic effects according to the Rocket Launch state, providing an immersive driving experience.

Brake

Parking

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to the vehicle rolling away

If the vehicle is not properly parked, it may roll away in an uncontrollable manner even on a small downhill slope.

The vehicle shall be properly parked and secured in accordance with the following methods to prevent rolling away:

- ► In uphill or downhill sections, turn the front wheels toward the kerb so the vehicle moves toward the kerb in case of rolling away.
- ► Shift the vehicle to park P. The electric parking brake is applied automatically.

WARNING Risk of accident and injury due to children left unattended in the vehicle

If children are left unattended in the vehicle, they could in particular:

- Open doors, thereby endangering other persons or road users.
- Get out and be struck by oncoming traffic.
- Operate vehicle equipment and become trapped.

In addition, children could also set the vehicle in motion, by in particular:

- Releasing the parking brake
- Shifting the gear
- Starting the vehicle

- ► Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- ► When leaving the vehicle, always take the key with you and lock the vehicle.
- ► Keep the key out of the reach of children.

NOTE Damage to the vehicle if it rolls down

- ► Always properly secure the vehicle to prevent rolling down.

Parking

1. Apply the parking brake to make the vehicle remain stationary.
2. In uphill or downhill sections, turn the front wheels toward the kerb so the vehicle moves toward the kerb in case of rolling away.
3. After pressing the brake pedal, shift into P gear when the vehicle is stationary, then the EPB will be applied automatically.
4. Release the brake pedal slowly.
5. Exit the vehicle and lock it.

Electric parking brake (EPB)

Automatic application of Electronic Parking Brake

Electronic Parking Brake will work if the vehicle is in P gear.

Electronic Parking Brake will also work in case of the following conditions:

- Parking Assist System keeps the vehicle in stationary state.

If the Electronic Parking Brake is applied, the red indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

Releasing the Electronic Parking Brake

When you press the brake pedal and shift from P gear into D, N, or R gear, the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) will be automatically released.

If the Electronic Parking Brake is released, the red indicator lamp on the driver information display will go out.

Applying/releasing the Electronic Parking Brake through the centre display

- Tap > to apply/release the Electronic Parking Brake.
- Enter the Settings interface:

Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Electronic Parking Brake* to apply/release the Electronic Parking Brake.

Auto Hold

WARNING

Autohold is only a driving assistance function and it does not replace the electric parking brake to apply brake. You must always maintain control of the vehicle and bear all responsibilities for the safety of the vehicle.

Auto Hold assists in holding still for brief stops during normal driving, so you don't need to keep pressing the brake pedal. When the Auto Hold is active, pressing the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake pedal again can deactivate the Auto Hold.

Enabling/disabling the Auto Hold

- Tap > to enable/disable the Auto Hold.
- Enter the Settings interface:
  Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Auto Hold* to turn on/off the Auto Hold.

When the Auto Hold is active, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

When the vehicle is shifted to reverse R, Autohold is not functional.

Auto Hold will be automatically switched to Electronic Parking Brake in any of the following conditions:

- The driver releases the seat belt or opens the driver's door.
- Auto Hold timeout (approximately 10 minutes).
- Shift into P gear.

After the vehicle stops stably by braking, activate the function and release it by pressing the brake pedal deeply.

Disable the Auto Hold when using an automatic car washer.

Electronic Stability Control

The Electronic Stability Control can help the driver prevent wheel slippage and improve traction of the vehicle.

When the system is working, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will flash. You may hear a pulse sound generated during braking, and the acceleration may be slower than expected when you press the accelerator pedal.

When the indicator lamp on the driver information display is on continuously, the Electronic Stability Control is faulty. Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for repair.

The system features the following functions:

- Vehicle Dynamics Control (VDC)
- Traction Control System (TCS)
- Anti Rollover Protection (ARP)

Notes on the Electronic Stability Control:

- ESC is a driver assistance system. It is aimed at improving convenience and safety in driving. It cannot cope with all traffic and weather conditions.
- The system cannot replace the concentration and judgement of the driver. The driver shall drive the vehicle safely at an appropriate speed, maintain a reasonable distance from other vehicles, and follow local laws and regulations.

Vehicle Dynamics Control (VDC)

The function checks the driving and braking force of each wheel to stabilize the vehicle.

Traction Control System (TCS)

The function is activated at low speed and applies the brake on the spinning drive wheels, so as to transfer traction force to the normal drive wheels.

The function can also prevent the slippage or spinning of drive wheels on the road during acceleration.

Anti Rollover Protection (ARP)

The function reduces the risk of rollover, for example, due to sudden dodge or wheel

slippage. If the vehicle is in a dangerous state, the Electronic Stability Control will reduce the torque output and apply the brake to one or more wheels until the vehicle stability is recovered.

Sport mode of Electronic Stability Control

Overview of Sport mode of Electronic Stability Control

The driver can set the Electronic Stability Control to Sport mode to enjoy much more active driving experience.

If you set the Electronic Stability Control to Sport mode, intervention by this system will be reduced, allowing for more wheel slippage.

If you set the Electronic Stability Control to Sport mode, the assistance provided by the Electronic Stability Control is limited.

If the vehicle is trapped and cannot get out or when the vehicle is driving on a soft surface, such as sand and snow, the Sport Mode of Electronic Stability Control can provide greater traction.

Enabling/disabling the Sport mode of Electronic Stability Control

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *ESC* to set the Electronic Stability Control as needed.

If the indicator lamp on the driver information display is always on, it means this system is turned off. The system will be restored to normal mode after the vehicle is started next time.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

The vehicle is equipped with ABS to prevent the wheels from locking when you apply the maximum braking force. Under most road conditions, this system can improve the steering control performance of the vehicle in case of emergency braking.

NOTE Notes on Anti-lock Brake System

If the ABS fault warning lamp and brake system status indicator lamp / stay on, pull aside safely and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. If you brake in such situation, Anti-lock Brake System will fail, and the vehicle will be in a highly unstable running state.

Excessively high or low tyre pressure or using tyres of different sizes may result in reduced braking efficiency.

ABS will be enabled automatically once you press the brake pedal firmly. You may hear the working sound of the ABS motor and feel the pulsation of the brake pedal, which is a normal phenomenon.

Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD)

Electronic Brake Distribution can adjust the distribution ratio of braking force of front and rear axles automatically during braking to improve the braking performance, and work with ABS to improve the vehicle stability during braking, so as to ensure steady driving of the vehicle.

Brake Assist

WARNING Risk of accident due to brake assist failure

If the Brake Assist fails, the braking distance under emergency braking conditions will increase.

► For emergency braking, fully press the brake pedal. Anti-lock Brake System can prevent the wheels from locking up.

Brake Assist provides support in emergency braking situations with additional braking force.

When you press the brake pedal quickly, the Brake Assist will be enabled:

- Brake Assist increases the brake pressure automatically.

- Brake Assist can shorten the braking distance.
- Anti-lock Brake System can prevent the wheels from locking up.

Once the brake pedal is released, the brake will operate normally and the Brake Assist will be disabled.

Brake Level

The vehicle allows the driver to select different power assist modes to achieve different deceleration control.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Brake level* to set the Brake level as needed.

WARNING

To ensure driving safety, please adjust the Brake level only when the vehicle is stationary.

Comfort Braking

Comfort Braking is used to reduce the longitudinal vibrations of the vehicle at the end of braking, achieving a smooth transition from deceleration to standstill.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Smooth Braking* to turn on/off the Comfort Braking.

When the Electronic Stability Control is turned off, this function will be suppressed.

Post-impact Braking (PIB)

After a collision, Post Impact Braking will initiate an automatic braking intervention to decelerate the vehicle, so that the subsequent collisions can be avoided or the impact severity can be mitigated.

When Post Impact Braking is operating, an extra noise may be heard inside the cab. The noise, which is caused during operation of the hydraulic pump and corresponding control valve, is transmitted to the cab through the vehicle body.

When Post Impact Braking is operating, the hazard warning lights flash.

Post Impact Braking is enabled by default once the vehicle is started, and you cannot disable it.

If Anti-lock Brake System is damaged during the collision, Post Impact Braking will not be triggered.

Power Steering Assist

Off-centre steering wheel alert

When the driver gets in the vehicle and the system detects the steering wheel is not centred, the system will remind the driver.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Off-centre steering wheel alert* to enable/disable the Off-centre steering wheel alert.

Steering Control

Steering Control reduces the force required to turn the steering wheel for better control of the vehicle, and exerts different power assist forces according to the selected drive mode.

- Tap > *Steering Control* to adjust the Steering Control as needed.
- Enter the Settings interface:
  Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Steering Control* to adjust the Steering Control as needed.

Steering Control adjustment is a related item of driving mode; When set to automatic gear, it means that the Steering Control follows the default value of the driving mode; when set to non-automatic gear, the Steering Control does not follow that of the driving mode.

Cornering Brake Control

NOTE

Cornering Brake Control is only an assistance system, and the driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the safe driving of the vehicle.

Cornering Brake Control can control the braking pressure on the inner wheels when the vehicle is braking in a turn to prevent the inner wheels from locking up early, improving the driving stability of the vehicle.

Hill Assist

Hill Assist can assist you in starting the vehicle on the hill and prevent the vehicle from slipping backward. After the brake pedal is released, the Hill Assist can keep the vehicle stopped on the slope still (for about 2 seconds).

Hill Assist works even when the Auto Hold is disabled.

NOTE Notes on Hill Assist

Hill Assist cannot replace the parking brake. Shift to park P when you leave the vehicle.

Press the brake pedal immediately when the vehicle slips backward. Hill Assist cannot completely prevent the vehicle from slipping backward from a steep hill under full load or on all road conditions.

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

When the vehicle encounters a steep slope or a continuous downhill slope in front, the Hill Descent Control will control the vehicle speed within a stable range, allowing you to concentrate on controlling the steering wheel and passing the slope more safely.

When the Hill Descent Control is turned on, you can control the vehicle speed within the range of 4–35 km/h (3–22 mph) by stepping on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal. When you release the pedal, the vehicle will run steadily on the slope at the current speed.

Hill Descent Control is an aid, which cannot handle all situations or road conditions. The driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle safely.

Enabling/disabling the Hill Descent Control

Hill Descent Control is turned off by default. When the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h (22 mph), you can turn on/off the Hill Descent Control through the centre display.

- Tap > to enable/disable the Hill Descent Control.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > – *Hill Descent Control* to turn on/off the Hill Descent Control.

When the switch is turned on, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on, indicating that the function is available. When the switch is turned off, the indicator lamp will go out.

When the Hill Descent Control is activated, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

When the vehicle speed is higher than 35 km/h (22 mph) and lower than 60 km/h (38 mph), the function will be suspended and will resume when the vehicle speed drops within the range of 4–35 km/h (3–22 mph). When the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h (38 mph), the function will be turned off.

The working sound of the motor is loud when the Hill Descent Control is working, which is a normal phenomenon.

Regenerative Braking

When the driver releases the accelerator pedal or presses the brake pedal, the vehicle can recover the mechanical energy to charge the high voltage battery.

Regenerative braking with accelerator pedal

Release the accelerator pedal, then the vehicle brakes and the energy flow recovery status is displayed on the driver information display.

Regenerative braking with brake pedal

Press the brake pedal, then the vehicle brakes and the energy flow recovery

status is displayed on the driver information display.

Regenerative Braking may be limited for the following reasons:

- The vehicle is in Reserve gear R.
- Motor torque is limited.
- The high voltage battery is fully charged.
- Regenerative Braking is not available when the vehicle speed is lower than a certain value.

Adjusting the Regenerative Braking level

- Tap > *Regenerative Braking* to adjust the Regenerative Braking level as needed.
- Enter the Settings interface:
  Tap > *Vehicle Settings* > *Driving* > *Regenerative Braking*, to adjust the Regenerative Braking level as needed.

Driver Assistance and Driving Safety Systems

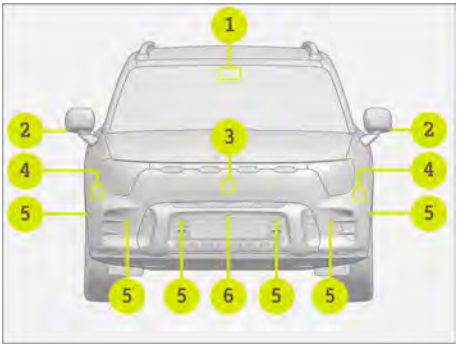
Driver assistance systems and your responsibilities

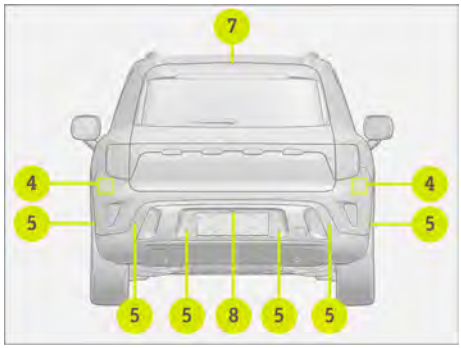
Your vehicle is equipped with driver assistance systems that help you drive, park, and steer the vehicle. The systems are only an aid and cannot cope with all traffic, weather, or road conditions. You are always responsible for maintaining an appropriate distance and speed and abiding by all applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Make sure that the driver reads all the topics related to the driver assistance systems in the complete User Manual to understand the factors such as the function limitations of the driver assistance systems and understand the knowledge the driver should have before using the system.

Driver assistance system sensors

The vehicle is equipped with sensors including multiple radars (millimetre-wave radars and ultrasonic radars) and multiple HD cameras, which are used to detect the distance between the front vehicle and your vehicle, identify traffic and road signs, and detect surrounding vehicles, pedestrians, and the like.





1 Forward camera, located behind the interior rearview mirror.
2 2 panoramic cameras, located in the exterior door mirrors.
3 Forward millimetre wave radar, located in the centre of the front bumper.
4 4 corner radars, located on both sides of the front and rear bumpers.
5 12 front and rear radars, located on the front and rear bumpers and wheel arches.
6 1 panoramic camera, located above the front licence plate frame.
7 Rearward camera, located behind the roof.
8 1 panoramic camera, located above the rear licence plate frame.

Depending on the model configuration and market, the actual equipment of your vehicle may be different from the descriptions and illustrations. Refer to the actual vehicle.

Limitations of driver assistance system sensors

Driver assistance system sensors have certain limitations. In daily use of the vehicle, please pay attention to the following conditions. Otherwise, the driver assistance systems may not work normally:

- As there are blind spots in the detection field of sensors, targets in or at the edge of the blind spots may not be detected or recognition may be delayed.

- There is a delay in sensor detection. When the vehicle is moving at a high speed or there are other vehicles, pedestrians or moving objects approaching quickly, the detection may not be timely.
- In severe weather conditions such as heavy snow, heavy rain, heavy fog, extreme cold and high temperature, the sensors may not work, work with degraded performance, or detect a nonexistent target mistakenly, causing the driver assistance system to stop working.
- Strong light, road reflection, ice or snow on the road, water on the road, and dirty road surface (blurred lane markings) may greatly reduce the recognition ability of the sensors.
- When a vehicle is running on winding, narrow and steep roads or entering or exiting a tunnel, the sensors may fail to detect other running vehicles or obstacles in front, or may mistakenly detect false targets that are non existent.
- When the vehicle is running in open or dim scenarios such as single-sided viaducts, ramps, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, snowfields and Gobi desert, there is a probability that the sensors are blocked; after driving out of a specific scenario, the fault will automatically disappear without handling.
- When the radars are interfered with by other radio devices or strong radar reflections, they may delay recognition, completely fail to detect any target or mistakenly detect nonexistent targets.
- In some cases, the radars may take longer than expected to detect other vehicles or completely fail to detect them.
- In scenarios with many metal reflective objects around, such as construction sites, road manhole covers, gantries, speed bumps, metal fences, railway tracks and gates, the radars may delay recognition, completely fail to detect any target or mistakenly detect nonexistent targets.
- For atypical targets, including but not limited to fire trucks, garbage trucks, tank trucks, long trailers, large trucks, sprinkler trucks, vehicles carrying trees, extra-wide vehicles, extra-long vehicles, pedestrians holding umbrellas, etc., sensors may delay recognition, fail to detect any target or mistakenly detect nonexistent targets.
- For stationary objects, animals, and small vehicles including but not limited to bicycles, tricycles, four-wheeled carriages, electric bicycles, motorcycles, shopping carts, baby carriages, etc., sensors may delay recognition or fail to detect any target.

NOTE

- ▶ The target type shown on the display may not be consistent with the actual target type.
- ▶ Do not paint the bumper without permission. Otherwise, the radar's detection performance may decline or the radar may malfunction.
- ▶ Never install accessories such as licence plate trim frame, or decals on the radars and cameras and in their surrounding areas. Otherwise, the working range of the sensors may be affected, causing some driver assistance systems to fail to work.
- ▶ Do not violently impact the sensors and their surrounding areas. If there are deformations, cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area around a sensor, the sensor's detection performance will decline or the sensor may malfunction.
- ▶ To ensure the sensors work normally, the sensor area must be free from mud, dust, ice, snow, water drip or other dirt, and must be cleaned regularly.
- ▶ Do not use sharp, corrosive or abrasive objects to clean the sensors. Ensure that the cleaning supplies do not contain hard debris such as gravel.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can control the vehicle speed within 0–150 km/h (0–94 mph) based on the target speed and following distance.

You can set your desired vehicle speed or following distance. When the system detects that the speed of the front vehicle is lower than the set speed of your vehicle, the vehicle automatically slows down to keep a proper distance to the front vehicle. If the front vehicle accelerates and its speed is higher than the set speed of your vehicle, or you change lanes and no slow vehicle is in front, the system will control the vehicle to automatically restore the set speed.

Limitations of Adaptive Cruise Control:

Always remember that in some special road conditions, such as viaducts, bridge openings or tunnels, the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be activated or may exit automatically due to system limitations. Adaptive Cruise Control is mostly suitable for driving on flat roads. If you use this function on steep downhill sections or when driving with heavy loads, it may be difficult to maintain a safe distance to the front vehicle. In this case, pay special attention and be ready for braking at any time.

WARNING Risk of accidents when using Adaptive Cruise Control during driving

Adaptive Cruise Control is only a driver assistance system. It cannot completely replace the driver for safe driving. When using the Adaptive Cruise Control, the driver still needs to control the vehicle according to the actual road conditions or traffic conditions.

- The Adaptive Cruise Control is an assistance function for the driver. It cannot replace the driver for driving. You are always responsible for driving the vehicle safely and observing local laws and regulations.
- The ACC adjusts the vehicle speed steadily based on driver intentions and the traffic conditions ahead. When immediate braking is needed, it is your responsibility to actively take braking measures.
- Adaptive Cruise Control cannot cover all driving scenarios and traffic, weather and road conditions.
- If the ACC fails to maintain an appropriate speed or keep a proper distance from the vehicle ahead, be sure to intervene by taking appropriate measures.
- Repair or replacement of the Adaptive Cruise Control and its components requires professional equipment and technicians. Please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for relevant operations.
- Adaptive Cruise Control cannot respond to animals or pedestrians. The driver needs to take over the vehicle control timely.
- Adaptive Cruise Control may not respond to irregular vehicles, vehicles loaded with irregularly shaped objects or small vehicles (such as bicycles, tricycles and motorcycles).
- Adaptive Cruise Control may not respond to slow-moving, parked or approaching vehicles, or other stationary targets.

- Intersections with traffic lights cannot be recognised, and the driver needs to take over the vehicle control.
- Do not use the Adaptive Cruise Control under complex driving conditions, such as urban roads or other environments with serious traffic congestion, roads with a large amount of water or silt, severe rain and snow, low visibility, windy weather and ramps.
- The Adaptive Cruise Control may not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane.
- Too many objects in the boot may result in vehicle posture change, causing degraded target identification performance or Adaptive Cruise Control failure.
- When another vehicle changes lanes and moves in front of your vehicle, the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to respond immediately. The driver shall brake timely.
- During driving on a steep downhill slope, it is hard for the Adaptive Cruise Control to keep an appropriate distance from vehicles in front. Please take special care under such circumstance and prepare for braking.
- During driving into and out of curves, the selection of targets may be delayed or disturbed. The Adaptive Cruise Control may brake unexpectedly, brake too late, or accelerate.
- When the vehicle is turning, it will slow down to ensure safety. This is a normal phenomenon.
- On sharp curves, such as winding roads, the ACC may not accurately detect targets ahead due to sensor limitations, which may cause the vehicle to accelerate. Therefore, drivers are required to take control of the vehicle based on the actual situation.
- When a vehicle in front in the adjacent lane cuts into the driving trajectory of the vehicle, the detection may be affected or delayed in some environments, such as low reflection intensity of targets (bicycles and tricycles), and electromagnetic interference, leading to the Adaptive Cruise Control unable to recognise the target or unable to accurately calculate the distance from the front vehicle. In this case, the Adaptive Cruise Control will be unresponsive or brake late, and the driver needs to actively control the vehicle.
- This function is not recommended in complex environments, for example, road construction (which may cause failure in object recognition, such as traffic cones and road construction signs).

WARNING

The driver shall always be vigilant, pay close attention to potential dangers around, and be ready to intervene in or take over the vehicle control manually in time to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, safe driving will be affected, which may cause accidents, and even property damage and personal injury.

The Adaptive Cruise Control may have the following unintended behaviours:

- The system may occasionally react to vehicles or objects that do not exist or are not in your lane, causing unnecessary or inappropriate deceleration.
- The actual vehicle speed exceeds the set target speed or the speed limit of the road when the vehicle is going downhill not under adequate speed control due to reasons such as the vehicle being overloaded or on a slope.
- The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect and identify all obstacles, causing the vehicle to be unable to decelerate or brake in time to avoid obstacles. For example, the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect and identify overturned accident vehicles, pillars, piers, and stationary or slow-moving vehicles or obstacles that suddenly appear in front after the front vehicle leaves.

Install the front license plate frame with caution, because the wide metal plate frame can affect the front radar signal, and cause the front radar to incorrectly handle the vehicle's driving status or produce false alarms.

When the front vehicle frequently presses the lane marking back and forth, the Adaptive Cruise Control may frequently control the vehicle to accelerate and decelerate. At this time, the driver needs to actively control the vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control can speed up and slow down the vehicle. When the vehicle decelerates, the braking system works and may make a sound. This is a normal phenomenon.

If the vehicle under Adaptive Cruise Control is too close to the forward vehicle, Front Collision Mitigation may be triggered by Adaptive Cruise Control.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control to Ready mode

Press the button on the left of the steering wheel and select smart Pilot Assist/Adaptive Cruise Control/Speed Limiting. Press the button on the left of the steering wheel to activate and enable the selected function.

When the button on the left of the steering wheel is set to Adaptive Cruise Control and the indicator lamp on the driver information display comes on, the Adaptive Cruise Control is in Ready mode.

Enabling the Adaptive Cruise Control

Enabling conditions of Adaptive Cruise Control:

- All doors, the bonnet and the liftgate are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The performance of the brake system is normal.
- Electronic Parking Brake is released.
- Electronic Stability Control is not deactivated.
- The vehicle speed is within 0–150 km/h (0–94 mph).
- The vehicle is in D gear.
- The camera and the front radar area are not covered by dust, rain, ice, snow or other dirt.
- Hill Descent Control is not activated.

Press the button on the left side of the steering wheel, then the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on, the Adaptive Cruise Control

will be enabled and the current vehicle speed will be set as the set cruising speed.

Adjusting the Adaptive Cruise Control

When the Adaptive Cruise Control is working, you can set the target speed and following distance as needed.

After the Adaptive Cruise Control is turned on, press the button on the left side of the steering wheel to adjust the following distance, which is level 3 by default and can be cycled through in a level-down way. Level 3 of the following distance is farther, while Level 1 is closer.

The driver can adjust the cruising speed of Adaptive Cruise Control by pressing the button + − on the left of the steering wheel.

Press the button + on the left of the steering wheel: Press and release it to decrease the vehicle speed by 1 km/h (1 mph); press and hold it to decrease the vehicle speed by 5 km/h (3 mph).

Left button − on the steering wheel: Press and release it to decrease the vehicle speed by 1 km/h (1 mph); press and hold it to decrease the vehicle speed by 5 km/h (3 mph).

After the Adaptive Cruise Control is activated, when the vehicle recognises that the speed limit information is displayed on the driver information display, if the driver presses the button on the left side of the steering wheel, the Adaptive Cruise Control will set the speed limit to the cruising speed.

Turning on/off the Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control* to turn on/off the Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.

When the Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control is enabled, if a speed limit sign on the road is detected and the set cruising speed is higher than this speed limit, the system will automatically adjust the set cruising speed to this speed limit. If the set cruising speed is lower than this speed limit, the set cruising speed will remain the same.

ⓘ In case of accidents, your response time will be limited if following distance is short. You are always obligated to control the vehicle and keep a safe distance.

- When the Adaptive Cruise Control is active, if the driver steps on the accelerator pedal, he/she will take over the vehicle control for acceleration. At this time, the Adaptive Cruise Control will not work.
- The higher the vehicle speed, the longer the following distance.

WARNING

The driver shall always be vigilant, pay close attention to potential dangers around, and be ready to intervene in or take over the vehicle control manually in time to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, safe driving will be affected, which may cause accidents, and even property damage and personal injury.

- ▶ The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot handle conditions with pedestrians and vehicles moving in the opposite direction.
- ▶ When the vehicle is too close to the front vehicle or pedestrian, the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to correctly identify the target.
- ▶ When a stationary target or an emergency braking target appears in front, the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to correctly identify the target.
- ▶ The driver's intervention in the accelerator pedal will inhibit the anti-collision braking function. During the period when the driver intervenes in the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed is completely controlled by the driver, and the Adaptive Cruise Control no longer assists the driver in controlling the vehicle speed and cannot decelerate.
- ▶ Do not over-rely on the Adaptive Cruise Control to follow a vehicle on a congested road. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle maintains an accurate and safe following distance to avoid collision.

Disabling the Adaptive Cruise Control

Press the button on the left of the steering wheel. After the Adaptive Cruise Control enters the Ready mode, the driver information display will turn the indicator lamp to the indicator lamp , indicating that the system enters the Ready mode, and the Adaptive Cruise Control does not control the vehicle speed now.

Adaptive Cruise Control will automatically enter the Ready mode particularly for any of the following reasons:

- Any door, the bonnet or the liftgate is open.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The braking system has degraded performance or fails.
- Electronic Parking Brake is enabled.
- The wheels lose traction.
- The vehicle speed exceeds the set value and keeps longer than the designed time.
- The vehicle is shifted into **N**, **R** or **P** gear.
- Electronic Stability Control is turned off or intervened in.
- Hill Descent Control is turned on.
- The camera and the front radar area are covered by dust, rain, ice, snow or other dirt.

After Adaptive Cruise Control exits automatically, you must take over the vehicle to ensure the safe driving of the vehicle.

Re-enabling the Adaptive Cruise Control

Press the button on the left of the steering wheel to re-enable the Adaptive Cruise Control, then the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

If current speed and target speed are quite different, the speed will increase gradually after reactivating Adaptive Cruise Control.

Car Following mode

In the Car Following mode, if the front vehicle stops gradually, your vehicle will also stop gradually following the front vehicle and keep a safe distance.

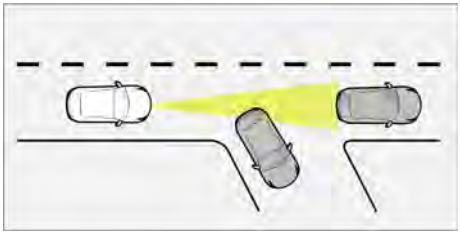
- In 4 seconds after your vehicle stops, if the front vehicle resumes driving, the Car Following will automatically resume.
- If the followed vehicle stops for more than 4 seconds, the system will judge

the surrounding conditions and the driver's status. If the automatic resumption conditions are not met and the front vehicle starts to run, the driver needs to press the accelerator pedal or press the button on the left of the steering wheel to resume the Adaptive Cruise Control.

- If the followed vehicle stops for more than 5 minutes, the Adaptive Cruise Control will exit automatically.
- If the driver actively deactivates the Adaptive Cruise Control, the vehicle will not move forward automatically. If the driver presses the accelerator pedal at this time, the vehicle will move forward, and the driver needs to take over the vehicle control and pay attention to safe driving.

When the vehicle enters, exits or drives into a bend, if the vehicle in front goes out of the sensor's detection range, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly. The driver must pay attention and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.

Changing the target vehicle of Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING

After the Adaptive Cruise Control is activated, if the target vehicle suddenly turns and leaves the lane and there is a stationary or slow-moving vehicle or obstacle in front, the vehicle will not slow down or brake, and may accelerate to the previously set target speed. At this time, the driver must immediately and actively press the brake pedal to slow down/brake and maintain a safe distance.

Lane Centring Control (LCC)

Lane Centring Control (smart Pilot Assist shown on the driver information display) can execute longitudinal and lateral control on the vehicle within 0–150 km/h (0–94 mph) when the system conditions are met, that is, to make the vehicle run at the centre of the current lane.

Adaptive Cruise Control (longitudinal control):

Lane Centring Control can support all operations (speed adjustment, following distance adjustment, and the like) and all functions (Cruise Control, Car Following, Speed Limiting, and the like) of the Adaptive Cruise Control within 0–150 km/h (0–94 mph).

Lane Centring Control (lateral control + longitudinal control):

Within 0–150 km/h (0–94 mph), the Lane Centring Control can assist in controlling the vehicle to centre in the lane according to the road boundaries on both sides (the system shall detect a lane marking on at least one side) or assist in controlling the steering wheel at low speed following the trajectory of the front vehicle when conditions are met, provided that all functions of the Adaptive Cruise Control are available.

Overtaking dodging:

When the Lane Centring Control (LCC) is activated and the vehicle speed is within 80–150 km/h (49–94 mph), if the vehicle needs to overtake a truck, trailer or other large vehicles in the adjacent lane, the system will automatically control the vehicle to deviate in the current lane for dodging.

Hands-off alarm:

When the Lane Centring Control is working, you need to hold the steering wheel. If the system detects that no hand is holding the steering wheel over a certain period of time, it will issue a text reminder; if the driver still does not take over the vehicle control, the alarm will be escalated (for example, a message keeps displayed on the screen), accompanied by a buzz. If the driver ignores the hands-off alarm, the system will automatically exit after the

high-frequency buzz ends and cannot automatically resume.

When the system detects that both hands are holding the steering wheel during the hands-off alarm, the alarm will disappear and the system will continue to work normally.

The following scenarios will affect the accuracy of hands-off detection:

- The driver intentionally holds the steering wheel gently.
- Tough roads, such as bumpy roads and pothole roads.
- Some foreign objects are placed on the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel is covered with an item such as steering wheel cover.

Lane Change Assist:

Lane Change Assist is available only when the Lane Centring Control is activated. After turning on the Lane Change Assist switch, the driver can activate the Lane Change Assist by turning on the turn signal lights when the vehicle enters highways and viaducts and surrounding conditions meet lane change conditions. When the function is activated (→ Page 139), the system will control the vehicle to change lanes automatically.

WARNING

The driver is responsible for determining whether the lane change is legal, safe and appropriate. Therefore, before starting to change lanes, be sure to check the blind spot, lane markings and the surrounding environment to confirm that it is legal, safe and appropriate to enter the target lane.

- The vehicle may misidentify the lane marking type, resulting in incorrect lane change. Be sure to initiate Lane Change Assist only after confirming that the lane marking permits lane changing, so as to avoid violating traffic rules.
- Do not rely excessively on Lane Change Assist to determine the driving path. If you pass through a section where a dashed line changes to a solid line or a solid line changes to a dashed line when changing lanes, the vehicle may run over the solid line near the meeting area between the dashed and solid lines.
- Do not use Lane Change Assist in the following situations: icy, slippery or uneven roads; when heavy traffic blocks the view of the adjacent lane ahead; on consecutive bends with sharp curves; in construction zones; on roads with alternating old and new lane markings or severely worn lane markings; or in adverse weather such as heavy rain, heavy snow or dense fog.
- The driver shall always be vigilant and pay close attention to various dangerous situations around, and intervene in or take over the vehicle control manually in time if necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, safe driving will be affected, which may cause accidents, and even property damage and personal injury.

WARNING Risk of accidents when using Lane Centring Control during driving

- Lane Centring Control is only a driver assistance system. It cannot realize fully autonomous driving. You are always responsible for driving the vehicle safely and observing local laws and regulations.
- Lane Centring Control is only applicable to enclosed roads such as highways and viaducts. The driver must always remain attentive to driving and maintain control of the vehicle.
- If the Lane Centring Control cannot keep an appropriate speed or a safe distance from the front vehicle, you must intervene.
- Too many objects in the boot may result in vehicle posture change, therefore degrading or disabling the system.
- When another vehicle changes lanes and drives to front of the vehicle, the system may not be able to respond immediately. The driver shall brake in time.
- Lane Centring Control is not an anti-collision system. In emergency situations, you are responsible for taking the necessary measures to avoid danger.
- When driving on a steep downhill slope, it is hard for this function to keep an appropriate distance from the front vehicle. In these cases, the driver shall drive carefully and be ready to brake at any time.
- The Lane Centring Control may not respond to animals, pedestrians, stationary objects, irregularly shaped vehicles, vehicles loaded with irregularly shaped goods, stationary vehicles or small vehicles (such as bicycles, tricycles and motorcycles).
- When your vehicle follows the front vehicle moving at low speed, the system can control the torque on the steering wheel according to the driving trajectory of the front vehicle, so that your vehicle can move slowly following the front vehicle. At this time, you need to pay special attention to the traffic conditions around the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is running on a sharp curve or an S curve road, due to the limitation of the sensor's field of view, the system may not be able to recognize the target ahead and accelerate unexpectedly. In this case, you must actively intervene.

Limitations of Lane Centring Control

Lane Centring Control may be unable to work normally during driving under the following circumstances:

- Roads with sharp curves (e.g., ramps, hill ring roads, roundabouts, etc.), where this function is not recommended.
- Crossroads (e.g., give way line) or fork roads (change in number of lanes, for example, increased or decreased lanes).
- Bad weather: Heavy rain, heavy fog, heavy snow, direct strong light, etc.
- Road construction (failure in object recognition, such as traffic cones and road construction signs).
- Complex pavement with broken, unclear lane markings or disturbance in the lane (e.g., text and numerical signs on the ground, diversion lines, fish-bone lines, realignment lines, no-stop lines, horizontal deceleration lines, etc.).
- The driver takes over the vehicle control.
- The lane markings are covered by sand, dust, water, snow, etc.
- There are wheel traces on a rainy or snowy day, or wheel traces caused by the braking of other vehicles.
- There are continuous linear projections on the road, such as the shadows of railings.
- The forward camera or radar is covered.

- There are many obscure lane markings on a lane, e.g., in a construction area.
- The distance to the front vehicle is too small.
- Lane markings change rapidly, such as lane diverging, crossing or merging.
- The road is too narrow or too wide.
- Roundabouts, left and right turn lanes at various intersections, U-turn lanes, and left-turn, going-straight, right-turn waiting zones, where this function is not recommended.
- Large open spaces, school playgrounds and factory buildings.
- Country roads, muddy roads and gravel roads.
- Backlighting scenarios, for example, driving due west between 4:00 and 5:00 p.m.
- High beams are not turned on at night (light intensity below 50 lux).
- Residential roads or internal roads, where this function is not recommended.
- Toll stations.
- Multiple traffic participants on a one-lane carriageway for dual-direction travel.
- Multiple vehicles parked illegally/temporarily on a one-lane carriageway for dual-direction travel.
- When the boundary on one side of your lane is a kerb (e.g., guardrail, kerb, fence, wall, grass, sandstone, etc.), the overtaking dodging function may not work.

Enabling the Lane Centring Control

Enabling conditions of Lane Centring Control:

- The steering wheel is centred.
- The vehicle is not on any lane marking.
- All doors, the bonnet and the liftgate are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- Steering and braking systems perform normally.
- Electronic Parking Brake is released.
- Electronic Stability Control is not deactivated.
- The vehicle speed does not exceed the designed speed limit.
- The vehicle is in D gear.
- The camera and the front radar area are not covered by dust, rain, ice, snow or other dirt.
- Hill Descent Control is not activated.

Pressing the button on the left side of the steering wheel can select smart Pilot Assist / Adaptive Cruise Control / Speed Limiting. Press the button on the left side of the steering wheel and select smart Pilot Assist. When the indicator lamp on the driver information display comes on, it means that the Lane Centring Control can be enabled and has not been activated. Press the button on the left side of the steering wheel to activate and enable the currently selected function.

After the function is activated, the indicator lamp and indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on, and the current vehicle speed will be set as the cruising speed.

Exit of lateral control

When the Lane Centring Control is enabled, if any of the following conditions occur, the lateral control will exit, and only the Adaptive Cruise Control will keep on. At this time, the indicator lamp and indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on:

- The lane marking disappears (e.g., at a crossroad, fork, being blocked, etc.).
- The driver actively changes lanes or turns on the turn signal lights (when Lane Change Assist does not meet the lane change conditions).
- The vehicle is stationary or stops following the front vehicle.
- The lane is too wide or too narrow.
- Lateral deviation is too large.

WARNING

The driver is responsible for determining whether the vehicle's behaviour is legal, safe and appropriate. Therefore, before passing through an intersection, be sure to check the blind spots, lane markings and surrounding environment to confirm that it is legal, safe and appropriate to enter the target lane.

- Do not rely on the Lane Centring Control to pass through an intersection. When passing through an intersection, the driver must pay close attention to the prompts on the driver information display, the audible warnings and the surrounding environment, and take control of the vehicle promptly when necessary.
- When the lateral control is automatically disabled, an audible signal will be issued (voice broadcast switch in "Details" option) and a text prompt will be displayed on the driver information display (to inform the driver that the steering wheel needs to be controlled by hands). The driver must intervene to maintain a safe speed and distance from the surrounding vehicles.
- The Lane Centring Control will not respond to the signals of traffic lights. Be sure to observe the signs of traffic lights in advance, and be sure to stop and wait or control the vehicle to turn at any time.
- The Lane Centring Control only supports standard intersections with aligned lanes on both sides allowing for straight driving. Do not rely on the Lane Centring Control to pass through complex intersections or in merging scenarios, such as turning lanes, intersections with increased or decreased lanes, roundabouts, non-aligned intersections on curved roads, extra-long intersections, and irregular intersections.

Adjusting the Lane Centring Control

When the Lane Centring Control is working, you can set different target speeds and following distances as needed.

For detailed operation steps, refer to Adaptive Cruise Control (→ Page 125).

- When the Lane Centring Control is working, if the driver steps on the accelerator pedal, he/she will take over the vehicle control for acceleration.
- The higher the vehicle speed, the longer the following distance.
- To ensure that the vehicle follows the front vehicle as stably as possible, the Adaptive Cruise Control allows the following distance to vary with the relative speed of the front vehicle.

WARNING

The driver must always hold the steering wheel with both hands and observe the road and surrounding environment. In dangerous emergencies, you are always responsible for controlling the vehicle to maintain a safe distance. Be sure to take over the vehicle control immediately and take corrective measures.

- ▶ Do not over-rely on the Lane Centring Control to keep the vehicle in the lane. In scenarios such as curved roads, the vehicle may cross the lane marking or deviate from the centre of the lane. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is driving in the correct trajectory.
- ▶ Do not rely on the Lane Centring Control to determine the appropriate vehicle speed. The driver shall always drive within a safe speed range based on traffic and road conditions.
- ▶ Do not rely on the Lane Centring Control to determine the appropriate minimum following distance. The driver shall always drive within a safe distance from the front vehicle based on traffic and road conditions.
- ▶ During the period when the driver intervenes in the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed is completely controlled by the driver, and the Lane Centring Control no longer assists the driver in controlling the vehicle speed and cannot decelerate.
- ▶ The driver shall always be vigilant and pay close attention to various dangerous situations around, and intervene in or take over the vehicle control manually in time if necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, safe driving will be affected, which may cause accidents, and even property damage and personal injury.

Disabling the Lane Centring Control

You can exit the Lane Centring Control by the following methods:

- Press the brake pedal to exit the Lane Centring Control.
- Press the button on the left side of the steering wheel to exit the Lane Centring Control.

After the Lane Centring Control exits, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.

Lane Centring Control works based on other systems, such as Electronic Stability Control. If any of these systems stop working, the Lane Centring Control will be disabled automatically. If the system is automatically deactivated, a tone will be given and a text prompt will be displayed on the driver information display. The driver must intervene to maintain a safe speed and distance from the surrounding vehicles.

The reasons for disabled Lane Centring Control could be the following (including but not limited to):

- Any door, the bonnet or the liftgate is open.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The vehicle runs on the lane marking.
- The steering wheel is turned too much.
- The wheels have lost ground grip.
- The braking system has degraded or failed.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The front radar and camera are obscured or restricted.
- The vehicle is in Trailer mode (if equipped).

Reactivating the Lane Centring Control

Press the button on the left side of the steering wheel to reactivate the Lane Centring Control, then the indicator lamps and on the driver information display will come on.

For detailed operation steps, refer to Adaptive Cruise Control (→ Page 125).

When the Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control is enabled, if a speed limit sign on the road is detected and the set cruising

speed is higher than this speed limit, the system will automatically adjust the set cruising speed to this speed limit. If the set cruising speed is lower than this speed limit, the set cruising speed will remain the same.

Turning on/off the Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control* to turn on/off the Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

During driving on a highway or main road, the Lane Keeping Assist can reduce the risk of the vehicle deviating from its lane in certain circumstances.

Within the working speed range, the Lane Keeping Assist can identify lane markings, pedestrians, kerbs and front/rear vehicles and measure the distance between the left and right lane markings of the current lane and the vehicle through the windscreen camera, front radar and rear angle radars on both sides. If it is detected that the vehicle is deviating from the lane without manual control or the vehicle is deviating from the lane and may collide with pedestrians or vehicles in adjacent lanes, the Lane Keeping Assist will actively request for steering to make the vehicle return to the original lane. When the vehicle is about to or is deviating from the lane, the system will remind the driver to control the vehicle in the lane by vibrating the steering wheel or giving audible and visual signals.

NOTE

- ▶ Lane Keeping Assist is only a driver assistance system. It may not operate normally under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- ▶ Do not use this function in urban streets, construction areas, or road sections that are excessively wide or narrow or where there may be cyclists or pedestrians.
- ▶ Do not use this function on large bends, sharp turns, S-bends, ramps, traffic hubs, intersections, when lanes on the road are about to merge or split or when driving into or out of the main road. The functions in these scenarios will be limited or the performance is not guaranteed.
- ▶ You are always responsible for safe driving and abiding by all relevant traffic laws and regulations.

Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist

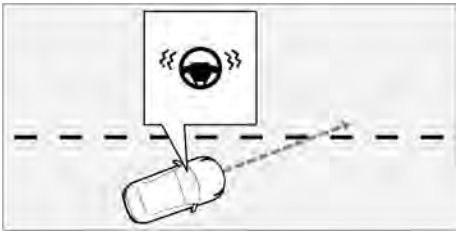
Lane Keeping Assist may be unable to cope with some traffic, weather and road conditions. It may not work properly in the following situations:

- Poor road conditions, road construction (failure in recognising objects such as traffic cones and road construction signs), or complicated traffic conditions such as road merging and diversion.
- Lane Keeping Assist will exit or be suppressed when the driver intervenes or the turn signal lights are turned on.
- Complex pavement with broken, unclear lane markings or disturbance in the lane (e.g., text and numerical signs on the ground, diversion lines, fish-bone lines, realignment lines, no-stop lines, horizontal deceleration lines, etc.).
- Low visibility due to bad weather.
- Electronic Stability Control is turned off or intervened in.
- For limitations of the system sensors, please refer to the section “Driver assistance system sensors”.

Lane Keeping Assist consists of three subsystems:

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW)
- Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)
- Emergency Lane Keep Assist (PLUS) (ELKA PLUS)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



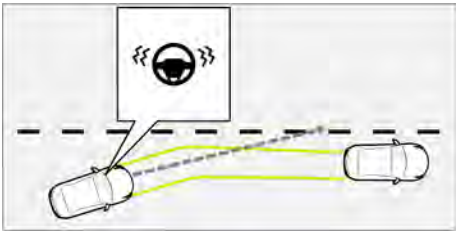
When the system detects that the vehicle is about to cross the lane marking within 60–180 km/h (38–111 mph) and the system requirements are met, the Lane Departure Warning will remind the driver by vibrating the steering wheel or giving audible and visual signals.

Turning on/off the Lane Departure Warning

- Tap > *Lane Departure Warning* to set the Lane Departure Warning as needed.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Lane Departure Warning* to set the Lane Departure Warning as needed.

When it is set to Off, the switch will be automatically set to Vibration when the next trip starts.

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)



When the system detects that the vehicle is deviating from the current lane within 60–180 km/h (38–111 mph) and the system requirements are met, the Lane Departure Prevention will actively request turning to help the vehicle return to the current lane. When the vehicle continues to deviate from the lane and is about to cross the lane marking, if the Lane Departure Warning is enabled, it will issue a warning.

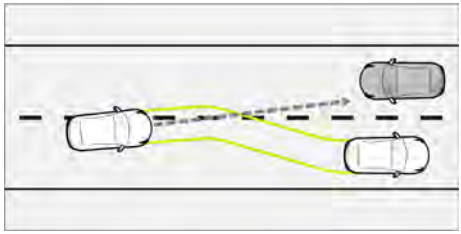
Turning on/off the Lane Departure Prevention

- Tap > *Lane Departure Prevention* to set the Lane Departure Prevention as needed.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Lane Departure Prevention* to set the Lane Departure Prevention as needed.

When “Solid line only” is selected, the system will work only when a solid lane marking is recognised.

When it is set to Off, the switch will be automatically set to Solid line only when the next trip starts.

Emergency Lane Keep Assist (PLUS) (ELKA PLUS)



Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS) will actively control the steering system to help the vehicle return to the current lane when the system detects that the vehicle is deviating from the current lane within 60–140 km/h (38–87 mph) (or 50–140 km/h (32–87 mph) when the rear overtaking target is recognised as a two-wheeled vehicle (such as a motorcycle)) and the system requirements are met or the road boundaries are clear, and any of the following situations occurs:

- The vehicle is in danger of colliding with an oncoming vehicle or a rear approaching vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- The vehicle is in danger of colliding with the kerbs or running off the road.
- The vehicle is in danger of colliding with pedestrians, bicycles, etc. in the adjacent lane.

Enabling/disabling Emergency Lane Keep Assist (PLUS)

- Tap > to turn on/off the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS).
- Enter the Settings interface:
  Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Assistance* > *Emergency Lane Keeping Assist* to enable/disable the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS).

  When it is set to Off, the switch will be automatically turned on when the next trip starts.

Limitations of Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS):

- The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (PLUS) only provides assistance, and it cannot operate normally under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (PLUS) may not detect obstacles like water-filled barriers and traffic cones.
- The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (PLUS) cannot detect obstacles like roadside fences and railings.
- The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (PLUS) will be enabled only when there is a high risk of collision. Do not wait for this function to intervene.
- The driver should always be concentrating and make judgments to ensure safe driving at an appropriate speed, keeping an appropriate distance from other vehicles and abiding by current laws and traffic regulations.
- For limitations of the system sensors, please refer to the section “Driver assistance system sensors”.

NOTE

- When driving on sharp bends or excessively narrow or wide roads, the Lane Keeping Assist may not work.
- When you turn on the turn signal lights during normal running of the vehicle, the Lane Keeping Assist will not give any warning or intervene (except when the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS) detects any vehicle coming behind).
- When the Steering Control or Electronic Stability Control fails or is disabled, or the vehicle control is interfered with, the Lane Keeping Assist may be restricted or unavailable.
- When the system detects the driver's obvious intervention, it may not intervene. For example, the driver turns the steering wheel quickly or the driver's intervention force exceeds a certain value.
- After this function is disabled, the system will not be able to provide steering control in emergency situations, and may not be able to actively avoid the risk of collision with kerbs or adjacent targets. Please exert caution.

Hands-off alarm

When the Lane Departure Prevention is activated, the driver needs to hold the steering wheel with both hands at all times. If the Lane Departure Prevention does not detect hands on the steering wheel when it is activated for the first time, a text reminder will appear on the driver information display and the corresponding lane lines displayed will turn blue. If the Lane Departure Prevention is activated again in the next period of time and still detects that the driver's hands are not holding the steering wheel, a corresponding warning message will pop up on the driver information display, accompanied by an audible alarm, until the driver takes over the vehicle control.

Setting the Lane Keep Assist sensitivity (if equipped)

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Assistance* > *Lane Keep Assist sensitivity* to set the Lane Keep Assist sensitivity as needed.

NOTE

- If the system fails, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.
- After either of the Lane Departure Warning/Lane Departure Prevention/ Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS) is turned off, the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on.
- When the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) is not activated, the lane lines displayed on the driver information display are grey.
- When the Lane Keeping Assist detects the lane markings and is ready to work, the lane lines displayed on the driver information display are white.
- When the Lane Departure Warning issues an alarm, the lane lines displayed on the driver information display turn red.
- When the Lane Departure Prevention initiates torque intervention on the steering wheel, the lane lines on the deviating side displayed on the driver information display turn blue.
- When the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS) applies torque to the steering wheel, the lane line on the deviating side shown on the driver information display will turn red with a halo, and the target with collision risk in the adjacent lane will be displayed in red. When the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS) is activated in the kerb scenario, only a text prompt will appear on the driver information display to remind the driver that the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist is activated.

Lane Change Assist (LCA)

After the Lane Centring Control is enabled, when the vehicle speed is within 60–130 km/h (38–80 mph), the Lane Centring Control is active and the Lane Change Assist is enabled, if the system detects that the current road meet the conditions of Lane Change Assist, the driver can toggle the turn signal light combination lever to activate the Lane Change Assist.

Limitations of Lane Change Assist

- Lane Change Assist can assist the vehicle in changing into another lane at a time. When you need to change lanes again, please turn on the turn signal lights again a short period after completing the first lane change.
- If the driver activates the Lane Change Assist, the turn signal lights will flash continuously during lane change.
- The driver shall not take hands off the steering wheel during lane change. If the system detects the driver's intervention (such as turning the steering wheel in reverse direction or pulling the steering wheel hard), the lane change will be cancelled or fail.
- The system cannot guarantee successful lane change every time. During lane change, the driver shall always maintain control of the vehicle.

Enabling conditions of Lane Change Assist:

- The road is not under construction (which may lead to failure in object recognition, such as traffic cones and road construction signs).
- Highways or viaducts with clear barriers.
- Good network (complete map data).
- The speed limit of the road is not less than 70 km/h (44 mph); the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h (38 mph).
- The driver holds the steering wheel with both hands and turns the turn signal light combination lever.
- The width of the target lane is 2.5–5.5 m, and there is no dangerous

environment (such as road construction, and road curvature greater than 250 m).

- There is enough space in the target lane, and there are no fast approaching vehicles behind.
- The corresponding lane marking is a dotted line.
- The lane markings on both sides are displayed in green.
- Electronic Stability Control is not turned off or intervened.

Enabling/disabling the Lane Change Assist

- Tap > *Lane Change Assist* to enable/disable the Lane Change Assist.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Assistance* > *Lane Change Assist* to enable/disable the Lane Change Assist.

WARNING Risk of accident from using Lane Change Assist

- ▶ Lane Change Assist is only an assistance system. You need to observe the surroundings and hold the steering wheel firmly while the vehicle is changing lanes automatically to take over the vehicle control in time in case of an accident.
- ▶ You are always responsible for safe driving and abiding by all relevant traffic laws and regulations.

NOTE

- ▶ Lane Change Assist can assist the vehicle in changing into another lane at a time. The second change requires turning on the turning signal light again after completing the first lane change.
- ▶ If the driver pulls the left lever slightly to turn on the turning signal lights to activate the Lever Lane Change, the turning signal lights will keep flashing during the lane change. After the lane change is completed or fails, the turning signal lights turn off automatically. After Automated Lane Change Assist has been activated, if the turn signal does not switch off automatically, the driver must switch it off manually after the lane change has been completed or has failed.

Front Collision Mitigation (FCM)

Front Collision Mitigation can warn the driver to pay attention to pedestrians, cyclists and other vehicles by means of tones, images, braking, etc. When the driver brakes too late, the braking force is too light or there is no braking measure at all, the system will take measures to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision. The driver and passengers usually notice the Front Collision Mitigation only when a collision is imminent.

Front Collision Mitigation works through the following four methods:

1. **Safe Distance Alarm:** If the vehicle is running at a speed higher than 65 km/h (41 mph) and is close to the front vehicle for a while, the system will remind you to keep a safe distance through visual signals.
2. **Front Collision Risk Warning and Braking Assist:** When the vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h (7 mph), if the system judges that there is a potential collision risk, it will alert the driver of a potential collision risk by an audible alarm, visual alarm, cadence braking, etc.

- When there are pedestrians, two-wheeled vehicles and other targets in front of the vehicle, the Front Collision Risk Warning and Braking Assist may work only when the vehicle speed is within 10–85 km/h (6–53 mph).
- When there is a vehicle or other target in front, the Front Collision Risk Warning and Braking Assist can work only when the vehicle speed is within 10–150 km/h (7–94 mph).

3. **Emergency Brake Assist**: When the vehicle is traveling at a speed higher than 30 km/h (20 mph), if the system detects that the threat of collision is increasing and the braking force applied by the driver is insufficient, the Emergency Brake Assist may be turned on. The system will assist the driver in exerting higher braking force to reduce the risk of collision. If you do not exert enough force on the pedal, this function will increase the braking force.
4. **Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB):** When the system detects a risk of collision, the driver does not take action and the collision cannot be avoided by making a turn, the system will activate the Autonomous Emergency Braking. Autonomous Emergency Braking can avoid the collision or reduce the vehicle speed during the collision by applying the maximum braking force.

- When there is a pedestrian, two-wheeled vehicle or other target in front, the Autonomous Emergency Braking can work only when the vehicle speed is within 5–85 km/h (3–53 mph).
- When there is a vehicle or other target in front, the Autonomous Emergency Braking can work only when the vehicle speed is within 5–150 km/h (3–93 mph).

NOTE Autonomous Emergency Braking does not guarantee collision avoidance in all scenarios.

- ▶ For stationary vehicle targets, the Autonomous Emergency Braking can work only when the vehicle speed is within 5–90 km/h (3–55 mph). If the vehicle speed exceeds this range, the system may not intervene in time.
- ▶ For stationary pedestrians and bicycle targets, the Autonomous Emergency Braking can work only when the vehicle speed is within 5–65 km/h (3–40 mph). If the vehicle speed exceeds this range, the system may not intervene in time.

When using the Front Collision Mitigation, please pay attention to the following:

- No system can guarantee 100% normal operation under all circumstances. Autonomous Emergency Braking is an emergency safety feature. Do not drive towards people or objects to test the performance of the Front Collision Risk Warning and Braking Assist/Autonomous Emergency Brake. Otherwise, accidents may occur, causing casualties.
- Front Collision Mitigation is only a driver assistance system. The driver is always responsible for keeping a proper vehicle speed and a proper distance from front vehicles. Do not wait for the Front Collision Risk Warning and Braking Assist to issue a signal or wait for the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) to intervene.
- Front Collision Mitigation may not work normally in some driving conditions, traffic conditions, weather conditions or road conditions.
- Due to the limitations of sensors, the Front Collision Mitigation may not achieve the same performance on valid targets identified by the system depending on the specific vehicle, scenarios and road conditions. Autonomous Emergency Braking does not guarantee

collision avoidance in all scenarios. For example:
- For targets that are stationary or moving slowly ahead, the system may not be able to intervene in time.
- When the relative speed of the vehicle to the front vehicle is too high, the system may not be able to intervene timely.
- When the target quickly cuts in front of the vehicle, the system may not be able to respond timely.
- When the target suddenly cuts out of the current lane, the system may not be able to respond timely to the target change in the current lane.
- To transversely parked vehicles or vehicles in transverse motion, the system may not respond in time.
- When the target is a vehicle running against the direction of traffic, the system may not intervene timely.

- The system will not work under the following conditions:
  - AVN (audio, video, navigation) will perform self-check when the vehicle is started. At this stage, this system will not work.
  - The system will not work when the driver does not wear the seat belt.
  - The system will not work in Off-road mode (if equipped).
  - The system will not work when the vehicle is reversing.
  - When the accelerator pedal is pressed more than a certain depth, the system will not work.
  - When the driver quickly turns the steering wheel for dodging, the system will not work.
  - When the system is in the Off state, it will not work.
  - When the system detects that there is a fault in relevant systems, it will not work.

Detection objects

Detection objects of the Front Collision Mitigation include pedestrians, cyclists and various standard vehicles (buses, trucks, passenger cars, etc.) moving in front of your vehicle. However, the Front Collision Mitigation may not be able to identify some targets such as special-shaped trucks and special-shaped multi-wheeled vehicles.

To detect a pedestrian/cyclist, the Front Collision Mitigation needs to obtain the following accurate information: the pedestrian's head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower parts of the body, and normal movement patterns of pedestrians and cyclists.

Front Collision Mitigation is only a driver assistance system for pedestrian/cyclist/vehicle detection. However, it cannot detect these targets under the following conditions:

- Pedestrians/cyclists are partially obscured or wear clothes not suitable for generating a clear image of their body outlines.
- Pedestrians/cyclists are not in strong contrast with the background. The warning or braking of the system is delayed, or the system will not give any warning or take any braking measures at all.
- Pedestrians/cyclists carry large objects, resulting in non-standard target characteristics.
- When pedestrians/cyclists are close to the edge of a fence, the system may not respond timely or may not respond at all.
- When the characteristics of a target vehicle change due to modification or carrying objects, or the vehicle itself has a special shape, the system may intervene by delay or not intervene, such as trucks, special vehicles or three-wheeled vehicles carrying goods.
- The system cannot respond to targets such as animals, walls and roadblocks (traffic cones, water-filled barriers, etc.).

Limitations of Front Collision Mitigation

Front Collision Mitigation mainly functions based on cameras, radars, braking system, etc.. In some cases, the system functions may be affected by sensors or actual roads, as well as related systems, resulting in limited or reduced performance (e.g.,

incorrect intervention, delayed intervention, or no intervention):

- Driving on wet roads: Wet roads lead to a longer braking distance, reducing the anti-collision performance of the Front Collision Mitigation. The vehicle achieves varying braking performance under different road conditions, which will affect the performance of the Front Collision Mitigation and may not always guarantee the ideal effect.
- Strong external lighting or extremely dim external lighting conditions such as strong sunlight, reflections, extreme light contrast, fast light changes and low illumination conditions may affect the detection function of cameras, resulting in reduced system performance; at the same time, complex ambient light may also make it difficult for the driver to see the visual warning signal.
- High temperature in the cabin: If the cabin has a high temperature, the cameras may be temporarily turned off and the system may not issue any warning.
- Low visibility in bad weather: Heavy snow, blowing snow, heavy rain, heavy fog and dusty weather can affect the windscreen and front bumper, reducing the system performance.
- Limited view fields of cameras/radars: The view fields of cameras and radars are limited. In some cases such as blocked cameras, blocked radars, strong electromagnetic interference, or a dim environment, the system may delay in detecting other vehicles or pedestrians or completely fail to detect them.
- Complex and changing traffic conditions such as tunnel entrances and exits, bumpy roads and sharp turns may affect the detection function of cameras, affecting the performance.
- Driver's high initiative: If the driver turns/accelerates actively, the system may not respond or delay in response.
- In bad weather, such as heavy rain, heavy fog, heavy snow and direct strong light, the system performance may degrade.
- In complex downtown areas or congested intersections, as there are many traffic participants, the target may repeatedly enter and exit the driving trajectory of the vehicle, causing the sensors to misjudge the target and triggering an alarm.
- When there are many traffic targets on the road and the environment is complex, the system may be triggered unnecessarily by mistake.
- On a bend/ramp, the system performance may be affected, and a false trigger may occur due to the limitation of road conditions.
- When the vehicle is entering or exiting garages, gates, and other areas, the system may be falsely triggered due to a large number of metal reflective objects.
- The system may be triggered unnecessarily by mistake during car following at low speed.
- In some specific scenarios, such as metal manhole cover, billboard, speed bump, fence and other similar combined scenarios, the system may not accurately identify the corresponding target, and may make misjudgements, causing unnecessary alarms or braking, or may not be able to intervene timely.
- During driving on a slope, such as driving up or down a ramp in an underground parking lot, the function may be triggered by mistake.
- For the limitations of other sensors, please refer to the section "Driver assistance system sensors".

Setting the Front Collision Risk Warning Sensitivity

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Front Collision Risk Warning Sensitivity* to set the sensitivity of Front Collision Warning as needed.

Turning on/off the Front Collision Mitigation

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Front Collision Risk Warning and Braking Assist* to set the Front Collision Mitigation as needed.

According to relevant laws and regulations, the system is set to the "Warning and Braking" option by default.

- When you switch from "Warning and Braking" to "Warning" or "Off", a pop-up window will appear to remind you to confirm the disabling. When you select "Confirm", the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on and this function will be turned off.
- When you switch from "Warning" to "Off", a pop-up window will appear to remind you to confirm the disabling. When you select "Confirm", the indicator lamp on the driver information display will come on and the warning function will be turned off.

When the vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h (7 mph), the Front Collision Mitigation cannot be turned off.

Rear Collision Mitigation (RCM)

When the user activates this function and the vehicle is in a gear other than R and running within 0–150 km/h (0–93 mph), if the system detects the risk of rear collision, it will remind the driver through audible and visual signals, and turn on the hazard warning lights to remind the drivers of rear vehicles to brake.

Detectable objects of the system:

- Motor vehicles
- Electric bikes, and motorcycles

Limitations of the system

Rear Collision Mitigation is a driver assistance function, which cannot handle all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions. The Rear Collision Mitigation may be affected and cannot work properly in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Other vehicles moving too fast.
- Small size of targets.
- Stationary or slow-moving targets.
- Poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow, fog, etc.
- In sharp turns, downhill, narrow or wide lanes.
- Other vehicles approaching or leaving quickly.
- There are obstacles behind the vehicle that block the detection area of the radar.

Sensor detection performance is limited. For details, refer to the section "Driver assistance system sensors".

NOTE

- If Rear Collision Mitigation failure or similar information is indicated on the driver information display, contact the smart Authorized Service Partner immediately. Otherwise, Rear Collision Mitigation may not work normally.
- When the vehicle is in Trailer mode (if equipped), Rear Collision Mitigation will not work properly.
- Rear Collision Mitigation can only alert the collision by warning, which cannot avoid collision.
- The driver is fully responsible for safe driving and abiding by all traffic laws and regulations. You should always be vigilant and pay close attention to potential dangers around to ensure safe driving.

Turning on/off the Rear Collision Mitigation

Enter the Settings interface:

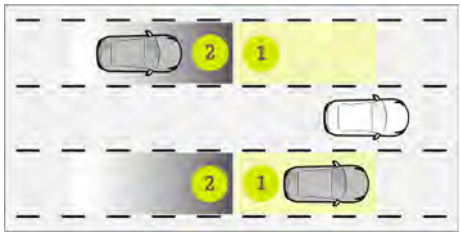
- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Rear Collision Warning* to turn on/off the Rear Collision Mitigation.

Blind Spot Safety Assist

When the driver enables this function at speeds within 15–150 km/h (10–94 mph), the system will automatically detect vehicles on the rear side. If there is a vehicle in the blind spots or a vehicle behind within 70 m in the adjacent lane is approaching quickly, the system will warn the driver by turning on or flashing the warning lamp on the exterior door mirror and showing an alarm image on the driver information display and the head-up display (if equipped). If the tone switch option is selected, there is a voice reminder when turning on the turn signal lamp, manually changing lanes and triggering the alarm.

Blind Spot Safety Assist consists of the following subsystems:

- **Blind Spot Detection (BSD):** When the Blind Spot Detection detects one or more vehicles, the system will warn the driver by turning on the warning lamp on the exterior door mirror and showing an alarm image on the driver information display.
- **Closing Vehicle Warning (CVW):** When the Closing Vehicle Warning detects that there are fast approaching vehicles in the lane on either side, the system will warn the driver by turning on the warning lamp on the exterior door mirror and showing an alarm image on the driver information display.
- **Lane Change Assist (LCA)**: When the system detects a vehicle in the blind spot or a vehicle behind in the adjacent lane approaching quickly, if the driver turns on the turn signal lights on the corresponding side, the system will warn the driver by flashing the warning lamp on the exterior door mirror, displaying the alarm image and issuing an alarm tone.



1 Detection area of Blind Spot Detection/ Lane Change Assist
2 Detection area of Closing Vehicle Warning/Lane Change Assist

The Lane Change Assist (LCA) system within the Blind Spot Safety Assist is designed only to provide warnings to the driver.

WARNING Potential risk of accidents caused by improper use of Blind Spot Safety Assist

- Blind Spot Safety Assist is an information prompt system. It will not intervene in the auxiliary control of the vehicle and does not guarantee normal work in all circumstances.
- Even if the vehicle is equipped with Blind Spot Safety Assist, to ensure safety during lane change, be sure to pay attention to the current traffic environment before changing lanes. The driver shall always maintain control of the vehicle.
- Blind Spot Safety Assist will not work during reversing.
- The driver is fully responsible for safe driving and abiding by all traffic laws and regulations. You should always be vigilant and pay close attention to potential dangers around to ensure safe driving.

NOTE

- ▶ Do not attach any objects to the exterior rearview mirror lenses for fear of any negative influence on the BSD's normal operation.
- ▶ If BSD failure or similar information is indicated on the driver information display, contact the smart Authorized Service Partner immediately. Otherwise, BSD may not work normally.
- ▶ The BSD is disabled when the vehicle is in Trailer mode (if equipped).
- ▶ The BSD is only designed to provide alert for collision risk, and cannot avoid collision directly.
- ▶ When the relative speed between two vehicles exceeds 15km/h in case of overtaking, the BSD will not provide alerts.

Limitations of Blind Spot Safety Assist

The functions of Blind Spot Safety Assist may be affected in some cases:

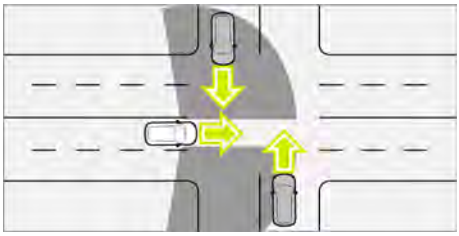
- Blind Spot Safety Assist cannot be used in bad weather conditions such as rain and snow.
- Blind Spot Safety Assist cannot detect stationary targets.
- Blind Spot Safety Assist cannot detect objects such as pedestrians or bicycles.
- Blind Spot Safety Assist does not work on sharp bends or in open areas.
- Blind Spot Safety Assist cannot detect vehicles running too fast or slowly.
- Blind Spot Safety Assist cannot detect stationary targets.
- For limitations of the system sensors, please refer to the section “Driver assistance system sensors”.

Opening: Blind Spot Safety Assist

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Blind Spot Warning* to set the Blind Spot Safety Assist as needed.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)



During driving at an intersection, if the system detects a risk of collision in front side direction, the system will issue visual and audible alarms to prompt the driver to brake in time to reduce the risk of collision.

If the system detects the risk of front side collision, a warning will pop up on the driver information display, accompanied by an audible alarm, to remind the driver.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) will be enabled only when the vehicle is moving forward within 4–18 km/h (2–11 mph) and the target vehicle is running within 4–60 km/h (3–38 mph).

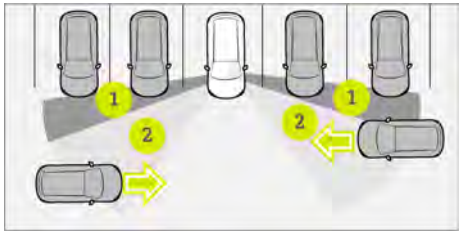
NOTE Note the following when using Front Cross Traffic Alert

- Front Cross Traffic Alert is a driver assistance system. It does not always guarantee normal working in every situation. The driver shall continue to maintain control of the vehicle in any situation.
- Although the vehicle is equipped with Front Cross Traffic Alert, always look around and ensure the surroundings are safe before passing through an intersection or in other environments where your visibility is blocked.
- Front Cross Traffic Alert mainly responds to crossing cars/SUVs, buses/trucks and other vehicle types. It may not work due to the limitation of recognition in the case of tricycles, vehicles with irregular appearance, pedestrians, cyclists and animals.
- Due to the limitations of the sensor itself, the system performance may degrade. For the limitations of the sensor, please refer to the section “Driver assistance system sensors”.
- The performance of the Front Cross Traffic Alert may vary for identified targets, depending on the vehicle types, scenes, and road conditions.
- If the turning corner and turning rate of the vehicle exceed the limits, the system functions will be limited.
- Front Cross Traffic Alert performs self-check during the start of the vehicle, and it is not available at this stage.
- Front Cross Traffic Alert will not be enabled if the driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- At complex intersections, such as congested crossroads, right-angle turns, and T-junctions, the Front Cross Traffic Alert may give false alarms.

Limitations of Front Cross Traffic Alert

- If driver assistance system sensors are in limited state, the Front Cross Traffic Alert may fail to work properly.
- Severe weather conditions, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, and fog, may weaken the sensors or cause the system to temporarily stop working.
- Front corner radars can be interfered with by other radio devices or strong radar reflections, causing reduced radar performance or radar failure.
- In some cases, front corner radars may take longer than expected to detect other vehicles or completely fail to detect them.
- During driving on winding, narrow and steep roads or entering or exiting a tunnel, front corner radars may fail to detect front running vehicles or other obstacles.
- Never hit the sensors or their surrounding areas hard.
- Cracks/scratches or stone chips in the front bumper area before the front corner radars may affect the performance of front radars.
- To ensure the sensors work normally, the sensor areas must be free from dust, ice, snow, or dirt, and must be cleaned regularly.
- For the limitations of other sensors, please refer to the section "Driver assistance system sensors”.

In the following cases when the two front corner radars are blocked by the surrounding vehicles and obstacles, the Front Cross Traffic Alert will not be able to detect side coming vehicles in time.



1 Blind spot (sensor view blocked)

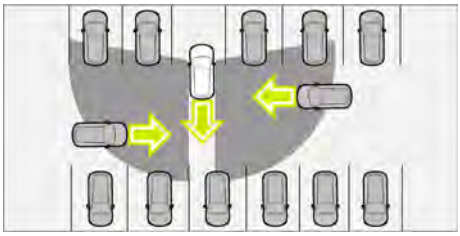
2 Detected area

Enabling/disabling the Front Cross Traffic Alert

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Front Cross Traffic Warning* to set the Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) as needed.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)



When you are reversing out of a parking space or garage, the Rear Cross Traffic Alert will alert you of the rear vehicle to avoid collision if there is a risk of side collision. If necessary, the brake will be applied automatically.

If the vehicle is shifted into R or N gear within 0–18 km/h (0–11 mph), the Rear Cross Traffic Alert will be enabled.

If the Rear Cross Traffic Alert detects the risk of rear side collision, a corresponding warning message will pop up on the central display and a warning sign will be shown on the exterior door mirror, accompanied by an audible alarm, to remind the driver. If the Braking option is selected, the system will automatically brake if necessary to avoid/mitigate the risk of collision.

Limitations of Rear Cross Traffic Alert:

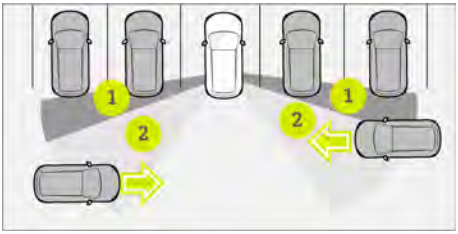
- If driver assistance system sensors are in limited state, the Rear Cross Traffic Alert may fail to work properly.
- Never add accessories such as decals at the rear radars and their surrounding areas. Otherwise, the working range of the sensors may be affected, causing failure of some driver assistance systems.
- Severe weather conditions, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, and fog, may weaken the sensors or cause the system to temporarily stop working.
- Rear radars can be interfered with by other radio devices or strong radar reflections, causing reduced radar performance or radar failure.
- In some cases, rear radars may take longer than expected to detect other vehicles or completely fail to detect them.
- When the vehicle is running on winding, narrow and steep roads or entering or exiting a tunnel, rear radars may fail to detect other running vehicles or obstacles behind.
- Never hit the sensors or their surrounding areas hard.
- Cracks/scratches or stone chips in the rear bumper area behind the rear radars may affect the performance of rear radars.
- To ensure the sensors work normally, the sensor areas must be free from dust, ice, snow, or dirt, and must be cleaned regularly.
- This function does not work on stationary or slow-moving targets.
- The target is approaching too fast.

NOTE

- ▶ Despite of the RCTA, the driver is also required to observe the surroundings before reversing to ensure that it is safe to reverse.
- ▶ The RCTA is disabled when the vehicle is in Trailer mode (if equipped).
- ▶ If RCTA failure or similar information is indicated on the driver information display, contact the smart Authorized Service Partner immediately. Otherwise, RCTA may not work normally.

In the following cases when the two rear side radars are blocked by the surrounding vehicles and obstacles, the Rear Cross

Traffic Alert will fail to detect side coming vehicles timely.



1 Blind spot (sensor view blocked)
2 Detected area

Enabling/disabling the Rear Cross Traffic Alert

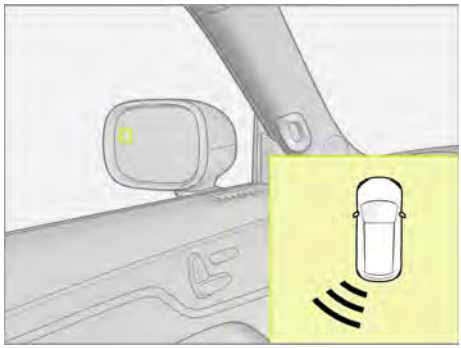
Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Rear Cross Traffic Warning and Braking Assist* to set the Rear Cross Traffic Alert as needed.

Door Opening Warning (DOW)

With the function enabled, when the vehicle is stationary or runs at a speed lower than 3 km/h (2 mph), the system will detect the traffic conditions on the side and rear. If a collision risk for door opening is detected, the driver information display will show a corresponding prompt and the warning lamp on the exterior door mirror will come on. If the driver or passenger opens the door at this time, the warning lamp on the corresponding exterior door mirror will flash with a tone to remind the driver or passenger to take care when opening the door for safety and avoiding a collision.

When the vehicle speed is higher than 5 km/h (3 mph), the Door Opening Warning will be limited.



If the Door Opening Warning detects a target with collision risk when the door is open, the system will flash the indicator lamp on the exterior door mirror and issue an audible warning, and the driver information display will show the corresponding target warning.

Limitations of Door Opening Warning

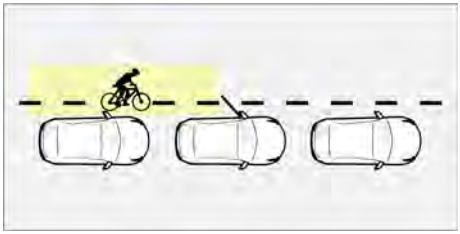
Door Opening Warning may not work properly in some situations:

- Other vehicles moving too fast.
- Small size of targets.
- Stationary or slow-moving targets.
- Targets coming in opposite directions.
- Severe environment like rain, snow, etc.
- Sharp turns, downhill roads, narrow or wide lanes.
- Other vehicles approaching or leaving quickly.

NOTE

- When opening doors, pay attention to other road users to avoid collision risk.
- The DOW is disabled when the vehicle is in Trailer mode (if equipped).
- Do not attach any objects to the exterior rearview mirror lenses for fear of any negative influence on the DOW's normal operation.
- If Door Opening Warning failure or similar information is indicated on the driver information display, contact the smart Authorized Service Partner immediately. Otherwise, Door Opening Warning may not work normally.

Detection objects



Objects to be detected by Door Opening Warning:

- Motor vehicles
- Electric bikes, and motorcycles
- Bicycles

Enabling/disabling the Door Opening Warning

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Safety* > *Door Open Warning* to enable/disable the Door Opening Warning.

Evasive Manoeuvre Assist System

WARNING Potential risks when using Evasive Manoeuvre Assist

- Evasive Manoeuvre Assist is only a driver assistance system. It may not operate normally under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- You are always responsible for safe driving and abiding by all relevant traffic laws and regulations.

The system can help you mitigate the risk of collision when your vehicle is rapidly approaching another vehicle that is stationary or moving in the same direction.

The system will be activated when all the following conditions are met:

- The system detects that the vehicle is about to collide with the front vehicle.
- You turn the steering wheel to steer around that vehicle.

When the system detects that the vehicle is about to collide and the driver turns the steering wheel to avoid collision, the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist will improve the steering force of the vehicle and assist the driver in dodging; after the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist is activated, the driver information display will remind the driver that the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist is active.

Notes on Evasive Manoeuvre Assist

- The system cannot automatically bypass the target vehicle. The system will not be activated if you do not turn the steering wheel.
- The system will not be activated if your vehicle is too close to the front vehicle to avoid the collision.
- When the Power Steering System is faulty, the Electronic Stability Control is faulty or turned off, or the vehicle control is interfered with, the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist may be restricted or unavailable.

- When the system detects the driver's obvious intervention, it may not intervene in. For example, the driver turns the steering wheel quickly or the driver's intervention torque exceeds a certain value.
- The system cannot be activated when the driver steps on the accelerator pedal deeply enough.
- The system cannot be activated when it detects a risk in adjacent lanes.
- When the vehicle is in Trailer mode (if equipped), the system cannot be activated.
- In bends, the system may not be activated, and the driver should keep alert to ensure safe driving.
- Evasive Manoeuvre Assist is an emergency safety function. It cannot avoid collision in all scenarios.
- Do not test the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist on actual roads under the guidance of non-professionals.

Limitations of Evasive Manoeuvre Assist

The functions of Evasive Manoeuvre Assist may be affected particularly in the following situations:

- When you are reversing, the system will not work.
- The vehicle speed is under 50 km/h (31 mph) or over 100 km/h (62 mph).
- A pedestrian, bicycle or motorcycle is moving at a speed of less than 50 km/h (32 mph) or more than 80 km/h (49 mph).
- There is a risk of crossing the kerb.
- Evasive Manoeuvre Assist is only a driver assistance system. It may not operate normally under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- Evasive Manoeuvre Assist cannot detect obstacles like roadside fences and railings.
- The driver should always be concentrating and make judgments to ensure safe driving at an appropriate speed, keeping an appropriate distance from other vehicles and abiding by current laws and traffic regulations.
- For limitations of the system sensors, please refer to the section “Driver assistance system sensors”.

Turning on/off the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Assistance* > *Evasive Manoeuvre Assist* to turn on/off the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist.

Speed Limiting (LIM)

When the driver adjusts the vehicle speed normally using the accelerator pedal, the Speed Limiting (LIM) can prevent the vehicle speed from accidentally exceeding the preset maximum value for a short time. If the accelerator pedal is pressed for a long time, the vehicle speed will exceed the preset maximum value.

Notes on using Speed Limiting:

- This is a driver assistance function, which makes driving easier and safer. However, it cannot handle all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- Speed Limiting cannot replace the concentration and judgement of the driver. The driver is always responsible for driving safely at an appropriate speed, maintaining an appropriate distance from other vehicles, and following local laws and regulations.

Enabling the Speed Limiting

Press the button on the left of the steering wheel and select smart Pilot Assist/Adaptive Cruise Control/Speed Limiting. Press the button on the left of the steering wheel to activate and enable the selected function.

Speed Limiting must be enabled to adjust the vehicle speed.

You can set the Speed Limiting when the vehicle is in D gear. The minimum speed limit can be set to 30 km/h (20 mph).

Press the button on the left of the steering wheel to turn on the Speed

Limiting. When the indicator lamp on the driver information display turns on, the Speed Limiting will be in Ready mode.

When the Speed Limiting is selected, press the button on the left of the steering wheel to turn on it. When the indicator lamp on the driver information display comes on, the Speed Limiting will be turned on, and the current vehicle speed will be saved as the speed limit.

Left button + on steering wheel: Press and release it to increase the vehicle speed by 1 km/h (1 mph); press and hold it to increase the vehicle speed by 5 km/h (3 mph).

Left button − on the steering wheel: Press and release it to decrease the vehicle speed by 1 km/h (1 mph); press and hold it to decrease the vehicle speed by 5 km/h (3 mph).

Disabling the Speed Limiting

Press the button on the left of the steering wheel, then the indicator lamp on the driver information display will turn to and the Speed Limiting will be in Ready mode.

Audio prompt for Driving Assist

An audio prompt for Driving Assist means that after an intelligent driving assistance system is enabled, the system will remind you of the current intelligent driving state of the vehicle through tones, broadcasting, etc.

There are three modes of audio prompt for Driving Assist: Detailed, Concise and Off, which can be selected by tapping > *Driving Assistance* > *Assistance* > *Driving Assist Broadcast Mode* on the centre display.

- Detailed: Tone + broadcasting are adopted to remind you of the current intelligent driving status of the vehicle as detailed as possible.
- Concise: In the general intelligent driving status, only tones are provided; only in the important intelligent driving status, broadcasting is provided.
- Off: There are no audible prompts, and only visual prompts are provided to remind you of the current intelligent driving status of the vehicle.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System

When the vehicle is in the D gear and the vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h (13 mph), or it is backed up at any speed, an Acoustic Vehicle Alert System tone will sound to remind pedestrians to pay attention to the vehicle.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System is a driver assistance function. It cannot replace the judgement of the driver about traffic conditions. You are always responsible for driving the vehicle safely.

Observe the following notes on Acoustic Vehicle Alert System:

- When the vehicle is moving forward at a speed below about 20 km/h (13 mph), or reversing at any speed, the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System will remind pedestrians. This helps other road users (particularly pedestrians and cyclists) to hear your vehicle better.
- When the vehicle moves at a speed over 20 km/h (13 mph), the Low Speed Alarm turns off gradually.
- Despite the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System, in some cases, pedestrians or other vehicles may not be able to hear your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to drive safely.
- Acoustic Vehicle Alert System will be turned off when the vehicle is stationary (not in R gear).

Setting the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Sound* > *Acoustic Vehicle Alert System Tone* to set the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System Tone as needed.

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)



Driver Monitoring System camera 1 is located on the A pillar on the driver side.

Driver Monitoring System detects the driver's actual status through the Driver Monitoring System camera. If it judges that the driver has fatigue or is distracted, a warning prompt will be shown on the driver information display, with visual and audible alarms, to remind the driver and ensure driving safety.

WARNING Risk of accident due to ignoring warnings from Driver Monitoring System

- ▶ The driver monitoring system is an assistance system and cannot actively intervene in driving operations; the driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle safely.
- ▶ Never drive when fatigued; the driver is responsible for maintaining a healthy and sober state for driving at all times.
- ▶ Warnings issued by the driver monitoring system should not be ignored. After the system issues a fatigue or distracted driving warning, the driver should promptly adjust their driving behaviour or stop the vehicle to rest.

When the system cannot detect the driver's full face, it could produce false alarms or report system error, and emit visual and audible signals. Please adjust your sitting posture or adjust the seat position to ensure that you can see the full camera in the driving posture, so that the Driver Monitoring System can work properly.

Driver Fatigue Warning

When the system detects that the driver has minor fatigue, the yellow indicator lamp on the driver information display will flash, and a text prompt and tone will occur to remind the driver.

When the system detects that the driver has severe fatigue, the red indicator lamp on the driver information display will flash and a text prompt and tone will occur to warn the driver.

Limitations of Driver Monitoring System

The functions of the Driver Monitoring System may be affected in the following situations:

- A low sitting position may prevent the driver's face from being detected.
- Driver Monitoring System camera is blocked.
- The driver wears sunglasses, a mask and other ornaments that cover the face.
- Strong lighting reduces the camera detection.
- Driver Monitoring System will be activated only when the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Some facial expressions may cause the function to be misactivated or become unresponsive.

The driver monitoring system does not record the user data such as face information, voice and image.

Turning on/off the Driver Fatigue Warning

- Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface, and

tap to turn on/off the Driver Fatigue Warning.

- Enter the Settings interface:
  Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Assistance* > *Driver Fatigue Warning* to turn on/off the Driver Fatigue Warning.

When the driver selects **Off**, the system will remind the driver the second time whether to confirm the disabling. After you turn off the Driver Fatigue Warning, it will turn on automatically on the next trip.

Turning on/off the Driver Distraction Warning

- Enter the Quick Controls interface:
  Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface, and tap to turn on/off the Driver Distraction Warning.
- Enter the Settings interface:
  Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Assistance* > *Driver Distraction Warning* to turn on/off the Driver Distraction Warning.

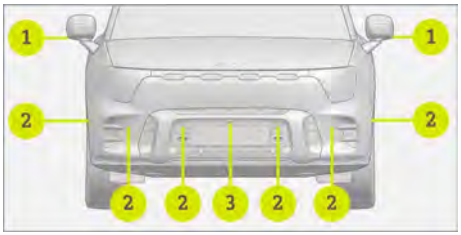
When the driver selects **Off**, the system will remind the driver the second time whether to confirm the disabling. After the Driver Distraction Warning is turned off, it will turn on automatically on the next trip.

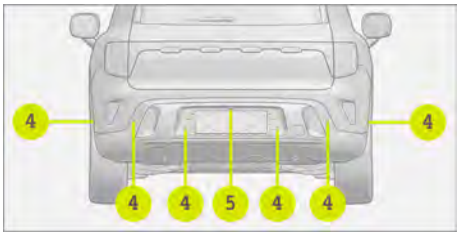
Parking Assist

Parking Assist System

Parking Assist System assists you when you drive in/out of parking spaces, parking lots and other places.

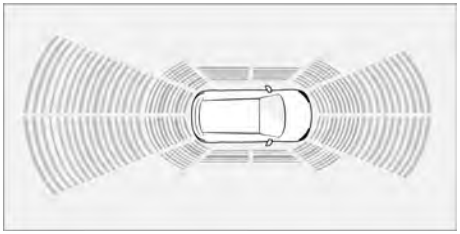
Locations of Parking Assist System cameras and radars





1 2 panoramic cameras, located in the exterior rearview mirrors.
2 6 front radars, located on the front bumper and wheel arches.
3 1 panoramic camera, located above the front licence plate frame.
4 6 rear radars, located on the rear bumper and wheel arches.
5 1 panoramic camera, located above the rear licence plate frame.

Depending on the model configuration and market, the actual equipment of your vehicle may be different from the descriptions and illustrations. Refer to the actual vehicle.



Parking assist warnings include Front Parking Assist Warning and Rear Parking Assist Warning. When the system detects an obstacle, it will show the corresponding distance and an indication bar prompt on the centre display, accompanied by a prompt tone. As the vehicle approaches the obstacle, the frequency of the prompt tone will increase accordingly.

NOTE

- ▶ The distance displayed on the centre display corresponds solely to the nearest detected obstacle.
- ▶ It may be affected by the limitations of sensors. It is only for reference, not the actual distance.
- ▶ The distance bar does not show the specific direction of the obstacle. It is only for visual reference.
- ▶ The red area indicates that the obstacle may enter the blind spot of the sensor, and the driver needs to exert particular caution.
- ▶ Due to system limitations or environmental influences, the alarm sound may be too low or delayed. Therefore, drivers are required to control the vehicle speed and park slowly.
- ▶ The higher the vehicle speed, the more the delay in the vehicle's alarm. When the relative speed is high, it may not issue an alarm in time. Do control the speed and drive carefully.

Limitations of Parking Assist System

Parking Assist System has certain limitations:

- If the radars and cameras are covered by dust, snow, ice, etc. or are dislocated or damaged, the Parking Assist System may issue a false warning signal.
- If the licence plate is installed beyond the licence plate holder, the Parking Assist System may issue false warning signals.
- When the vehicle is on a steep slope, a rough road, or a grassy field, the radars may give false alarms.
- The radars cannot detect objects made of certain materials or clothes made of fabrics that absorb ultrasonic waves (e.g., cotton materials), and cannot detect snow.
- The radars may not be able to identify or not accurately identify certain obstacles, such as low obstacles, thin poles, sharp objects, ground locks, height limit poles, suspended structures, ground potholes, corners of square columns, small objects that cannot reflect effective ultrasonic waves (barbed wire, hedges, fences, pillars, ropes, shopping carts, and the like), right-angle objects (corners, inclined cone-shaped objects, the rear of vehicles, edges of fire doors, and the like), wave absorbing objects, reflective objects, green plants, etc., causing false alarms or missed obstacle detection.
- The radar sensors will not detect flat objects on the ground, objects below bumper level, or objects that are too close to or too far from the vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions, such as rain, snow, intensive light and dark environments (e.g., underground garage), could affect the detection functions of the parking assist cameras.
- Due to the installation positions of the radars, obstacles outside the wheel trajectory may not be detected when the vehicle is not driving along a straight line.
- Some scenarios could affect the detection capability of the radars. For example, roads with fences, waterlogged pavement, driving in a tunnel, a front vehicle cutting in/out, sharp bends, etc.
- In some scenarios, if there is irresistible ultrasonic interference of the same frequency (such as exhaust sound, braking sound, and collision sound) or sudden temperature changes near the radar, the radar will give unexpected alarms.
- If the camera is dirty or blocked, the Parking Assist System will be affected.
- If the installation area of the camera is damaged by collision and the surround view camera fails to work or is dislocated, the Parking Assist System will be affected.
- Large or inconsistent changes in ambient brightness may affect the Parking Assist System, for example, under

mottled tree shadows or in reflective floor-painted parking spaces.

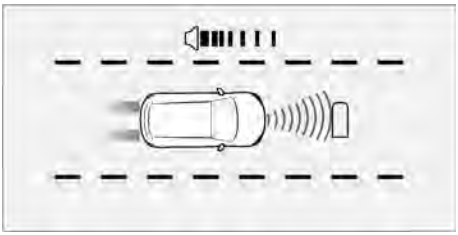
- Intensive ambient light, for example, direct exposure of the surround view camera to sunlight, will affect the performance of Parking Assist System.
- Insufficient ambient light, for example, in an underground garage without lighting or at night, will affect the performance of Parking Assist System.
- Parking Assist System may not be able to identify parking spaces with unclear lines or unclear contrast between parking space lines and ground colours, such as brick-paved parking spaces and wheel traces left after wheels pass through water.
- Parking Assist System cannot identify irregular parking spaces (such as trapezoidal parking spaces with inconsistent front and rear widths and curved parking spaces in parking buildings).
- There are cylindrical or square columns next to the parking spaces, or parts of them intrude into the parking spaces or are close to the parking spaces. Due to the detection limitations of cameras, there is a certain error in the distance judgement of obstacles. The driver needs to pay attention at all times and take over the vehicle control timely when there is a risk of scratching.
- If an obstacle partially intrudes or is close to the parking space, false alarms or missed alarms may occur.
- Parking Assist System may not be able to identify parking spaces with No Parking markings, traffic cones, No Stopping signs or ground locks, as well as special parking spaces.
- Parking Assist System may not be able to identify pedestrians, bicycles, tricycles, low debris, bricks and the like in parking spaces.
- Parking Assist System cannot identify irregularly shaped obstacles, such as the rear of a truck, spare tyres at the rear of other vehicles, suspended pipes and suspended fire hydrants, and false alarms or missed alarms may occur.
- Parking Assist System cannot identify special obstacles, such as shopping carts, baby carriages, trailer hitches, pillar edges, door edges, sharp objects and irregular objects, and false alarms or missed alarms may occur.

WARNING Potential risk of using the Parking Assist System

The Parking Assist System is only a driver assistance system. It may not operate normally under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions. You are always responsible for maintaining an appropriate distance and speed and abiding by all applicable traffic laws and regulations.

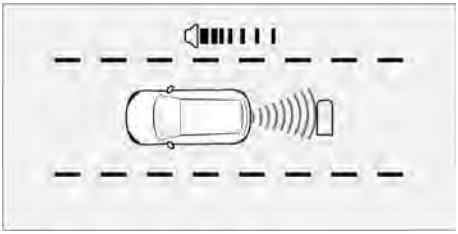
- ▶ Pay attention to the surroundings of the vehicle when parking, and confirm the parking conditions before parking.
- ▶ The system cannot detect obstacles in blind spots of sensors.
- ▶ In places where electromagnetic radiation is heavy, the radars may not work or may issue false alarms.
- ▶ When the vehicle is impacted, the system performance will be degraded. In severe cases, the system will have a fault reminder. Please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner immediately.
- ▶ Do not add mud flaps, bumper bars and other accessories not provided by the original manufacturers. Otherwise, the radars could fail or send out false alarms.
- ▶ Never use a high pressure washer to clean the camera and radar sensors of the parking assist system. Splash with relatively small flow, and keep a distance of more than 10 cm.
- ▶ When there is a fault reminder about the Parking Assist System or a failure reminder about the Parking Emergency Brake (if equipped), Parking System or associated systems, please drive to a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection and repair.

Front Parking Assist Warning



After the vehicle is started, when the driver shifts into D gear and drives forward at a speed of less than 12 km/h (8 mph), Front Parking Assist will be automatically activated. Maximum distance detected by Front Parking Assist is about 1.0 m straight ahead, 0.7 m in the front corner, and 0.5 m on the side.

Rear Parking Assist Warning



After the vehicle is started, when the driver shifts into R gear and reverses at a speed of less than 12 km/h (8 mph), both Rear Parking Assist and Front Parking Assist will be in the activated state. Maximum distance detected by Rear Parking Assist is about 1.5 m directly behind, 0.7 m in the rear corner, and 0.5 m on the side.

Automatic Parking Assist (APA)

Overview of Automatic Parking Assist (APA)

Automatic Parking Assist can search automatically for parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle and will prompt the driver to stop when an available space has been found. After the vehicle is stopped, operate according to the system prompts. Automatic Parking Assist calculates the parking trajectory and controls the vehicle's steering, speed, gear, etc. to slowly drive into the selected parking space.

Automatic Parking Assist supports three types of parking space: perpendicular, parallel and angled parking spaces (excluding multi-storey parking spaces).



NOTE

- Even if the Automatic Parking Assist is enabled, it is always your responsibility for active intervention by holding the steering wheel firmly or pressing the brake pedal when necessary.
- The driver shall abide by local laws and regulations, and always take full responsibilities for safe parking.
- In dimly lit environments, Automatic Parking Assist may fail to detect parking spaces or obstacles, creating a risk of collision. Avoid using Automatic Parking Assist in poorly lit conditions.
- Do not use Automatic Parking Assist on surfaces with a pronounced gradient or in areas with a height difference, such as downhill sections in car parks, cliff edges, pond edges, or shoulders raised above the adjacent road surface.
- Do not use Automatic Parking Assist in severe weather or on slippery, heavily waterlogged, potholed, icy or snowy roads.
- Automatic Parking Assist is only a driver assistance function and cannot fully replace the driver's control of the vehicle or observation of the surroundings. When using Automatic Parking Assist, the driver must always pay close attention to the surroundings and potential hazards and intervene promptly when necessary to ensure safe driving.
- Pay attention to the obstacle distance alarm when parking. When the obstacle is too close to the vehicle, it may be in a blind spot of the radar sensor of the Parking Assist System. In this case, the system may not give alarms or give false or delayed alarms, resulting in collision risk. The driver shall pay attention at all times.
- Automatic Parking Assist may not react in time to crossing or oncoming moving objects, such as pedestrians, animals or vehicles. It may also fail to react, react late or miss objects at the sides of the vehicle.
- For parking in the following scenarios, please exert caution to determine whether to use the Automatic Parking Assist. When using the Automatic Parking Assist, the driver shall always pay attention to the surrounding environment and potential dangers, press the brake pedal or intervene in the steering wheel and take over the vehicle control timely to avoid safety risks.
  - Children, animals, thin, pointed, short, suspended obstacles (such as suspended fire pipes, fire hydrants, stone piers and limit piles), isolation gates, fences, flower beds, lamp posts, kerbs, steps, shopping carts, pillars, and the like.
  - Small parking spaces, narrow parking spaces, irregular parking spaces, parking spaces with no parking sign, parking spaces on a slope, parking spaces with an erected floor lock, pitted parking spaces, parking spaces near a kerb or step higher than the vehicle chassis, parking spaces near a gully or ditch, etc.
- While Automatic Parking Assist is controlling the vehicle, it may occupy other lanes. Pay attention to passing vehicles and pedestrians.
- During automatic parking, ensure that for horizontal parking spaces, the distance between the front and rear vehicles is 0.8 m greater than the body length of your vehicle and the width of the parking space is greater than 2.1 m, and for vertical parking spaces, the distance between the left and right vehicles is 0.8 m greater than the body width of your vehicle and the width of the parking space is greater than 2.1 m. Otherwise, the system may not be able to identify the parking space.

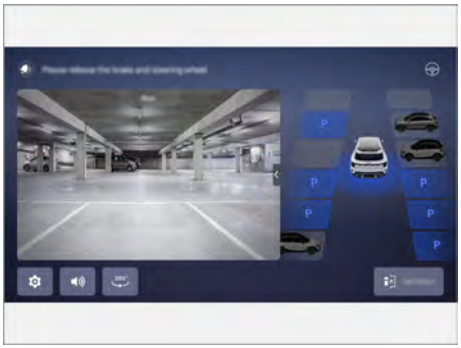
- ► During automatic parking, be aware that the steering wheel may turn quickly and could injure your hands.
- ► Various unforeseen situations may affect Automatic Parking Assist. If any of the following situations occurs, including but not limited to those listed below, Automatic Parking Assist will terminate and exit forcibly. You must then take control of the vehicle immediately:
  - Overspeed takes place during parking (with speed no less than 4 km/h (2 mph)).
  - The driver's response is too late.
  - The parking space is limited
  - The gear is intervened in.
  - The steering wheel is intervened in.
  - The accelerator pedal is intervened in.
  - The camera/radar/parking controller/associated system controller fails.
  - The radar is covered.
  - The camera is dirty.
  - The road is steep during parking.
  - The rain is too heavy.
  - Some movements are repeated too many times.
  - The parking process is interrupted too many times.
  - The system is interrupted and not recovered.
  - The parking trajectory exceeds the planned route.
  - The Electronic Stability Control is activated.
  - The Electronic Parking Brake is intervened in.
- ► If any of the following situations occurs, including but not limited to those listed below, Automatic Parking Assist will be interrupted. A corresponding interruption message will be displayed on the centre display. Follow the on-screen instructions to resume the function:
  - Obstacles around the vehicle are detected.
  - Door open detected.
  - Liftgate open detected.
  - It is detected that the bonnet or the charging port cover is open.
  - Driver's seat belt unfastening detected.
  - It is detected that a vehicle is closing from the front side.
  - It is detected that a vehicle is closing from the rear side.
  - Automatic hitch extension/Trailer mode activated (if equipped).
  - It is detected that the exterior door mirrors are folded.
- ► When Automatic Parking Assist is used to park the vehicle in a parking space close to the kerb, the traveling trajectory may be generated beyond the kerb. Please shift the gear according to actual conditions to prevent tyre or wheel damage caused by raised road shoulders.
- ► When the tyres are approaching the wheel chocks or limit stops in the parking space, please take over the vehicle control timely to prevent the tyres from rolling over the wheel chocks or limit stops, which could result in damage to the vehicle or tyres.
- ► Tyres not from the original manufacturer or wrong tyre pressure may affect the performance of Automatic Parking Assist.

For more information about the limitations of Remote Parking Assist, refer to the description of the limitations of the Parking Assist System (→ Page 154).

Parking in a parking space

Enter the Automatic Parking Assist interface:

- At a forward driving speed below 30 km/h or a reversing speed below 8 km/h, swipe from right to left on the centre stack display (only for the Planet desktop) or click  to enter the application interface, and click  to enter the APA interface.



1. When the forward driving speed is below 25 km/h, the system automatically searches for available parking spaces; if the speed is above 25 km/h, the system will prompt you to slow down and stop searching for parking spaces. It will not resume searching for parking space until the forward driving speed drops below 22 km/h. If the forward driving speed is greater than 30 km/h, the APA interface will exit automatically.

When the reversing speed is below 5 km/h, the system automatically searches for available parking spaces; if the speed is above 5 km/h, the system will prompt you to slow down and stop searching for parking spaces. It will not resume searching for parking space until the reversing speed drops below 3 km/h. If the reversing speed is greater than 8 km/h, the APA interface will exit automatically.

2. When an available parking space is found, the centre display will prompt the driver to park, display relevant information, and indicate this parking space.

When multiple parking spaces are found, the system will recommend the preferred parking space after the vehicle stops. You can also choose the preferred parking space.

3. After the vehicle stops completely, continue to press the brake pedal and tap **Start**.
4. When the parking interface shows "Please release the steering wheel and brake pedal" or a voice prompt sounds, please release the steering wheel and brake pedal to start automatic park-in.
5. During automatic parking (with speed less than 4 km/h (3 mph)), the driver shall always pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle without distraction, and take over the vehicle control immediately when necessary.
6. After the automatic parking is finished, the system prompts that the parking is completed.

Parking Emergency Brake (If Equipped)

Parking Emergency Brake detects pedestrians or stationary objects behind the vehicle through radars on the rear bumper and parking assist cameras. When there is a risk of collision, the Parking Emergency Brake will initiate emergency braking and give visual and audible prompts.

ⓘ Depending on the model configuration and market, the actual equipment of your vehicle may be different from the descriptions. The actual vehicle shall prevail.

Limitations of Parking Emergency Braking

Parking Emergency Brake cannot be used normally under the following circumstances:

- The reversing speed exceeds 12 km/h (7 mph) or is not higher than 2 km/h (1 mph).
- Fast-moving pedestrians.
- Any door, the bonnet or the liftgate are open.
- The exterior door mirrors are folded.
- The vehicle is in Trailer mode (if equipped).
- The vehicle is in Easy Loading mode (if equipped).
- The vehicle is in an environment with weak light, strong light, backlighting, or poor visibility (heavy snow, dense fog, etc.).
- Rainstorm lasts for more than 10 seconds.

- The radars or parking assist cameras are covered with dirt, the radars or parking assist cameras are faulty, or the system fails.
- On slippery roads, the collision avoidance performance of the Parking Emergency Brake will be reduced, because the vehicle needs a longer braking distance.

For more information on the limitations of Parking Assist System, refer to (→ Page 154).

WARNING Accidents and risks caused by inappropriate use of Parking Emergency Brake

▶ No driver assistance system can guarantee normal operation under all circumstances. Never drive toward personnel or objects to test the Parking Emergency Brake. Otherwise, accidents may occur, resulting in personal injury or death.

Parking Emergency Brake may conduct unnecessary braking under complicated driving conditions. For example, construction sites, rails, road manhole covers, when pedestrians, bicycles or motorcycles are passing through, underground parking lots, water sprinkled or splashed behind the vehicle, or similar scenarios.

Due to the detection limitations of radars and cameras, some obstacles cannot be accurately identified, and the Parking Emergency Brake cannot be triggered or cannot effectively stop the vehicle to avoid collision. For example, kerbs, flower beds, fences, walls with similar colors to the ground, edges of square columns, special-shaped obstacles, low obstacles, suspended objects, small objects, sharp objects, animals, children, crossing vehicles, two-wheelers, three-wheelers, baby carriages, shopping carts, etc.

NOTE Notes on Parking Emergency Brake

▶ When the Parking Emergency Brake is activated during automatic brake, you can release the Parking Emergency Brake by pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal under the premise of ensuring the safety of the surrounding environment.
▶ If there is no further operation within 30 seconds after the Parking Emergency Brake is activated during automatic brake, the system will enable the Electronic Parking Brake automatically.
▶ After the Parking Emergency Brake is enabled/disabled, the display will indicate the corresponding information.

Enabling/Disabling Parking Emergency Braking

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Driving Assistance* > *Assist* > – *Parking Emergency Braking* to switch Parking Emergency Braking on or off.

Park Assist 360 Camera

Park Assist 360 Camera captures images around the vehicle through the parking assist cameras and displays the images on the centre display, providing a 360° panoramic view around the vehicle.

WARNING Accident risk due to improper use of Park Assist 360 Camera

- People, objects and obstacles displayed on the centre display may seem closer to the vehicle than they actually are.
- The parking assist cameras are designed to assist in parking. However, the Park Assist 360 Camera cannot replace your attention and judgement.
- There are blind spots for cameras. Within the blind spots, cameras cannot detect objects or people around or near the vehicle.

Park Assist 360 Camera supports videos and images in multiple views.

Limitations of Park Assist 360 Camera

- As affected by the environment, for example, illumination influence/chromatic aberration, images may not present the real color effects.
- Due to the inherent limitations of the sensors, images may be subject to certain deformation, error, etc.
- Considering various factors such as vision disparity and image deformation, images shall not be taken as the basis for distance judgment.
- In case of insufficient or excessive illumination, the image quality will somewhat decline.
- Park Assist 360 Camera only provides visual images. The driver needs to always pay attention to the actual road environment.
- Keep the camera lenses clean before use to avoid affecting the final image effects.
- Before proper use, Park Assist 360 Camera shall be calibrated.

For more limitations of the parking assist cameras, refer to Overview of Parking Assist System (→ Page 157).

Turning on the Park Assist 360 Camera

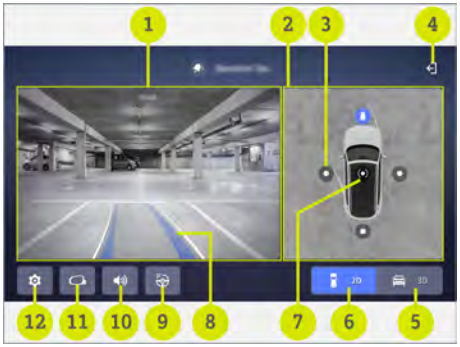
Enter the Park Assist 360 Camera interface:

- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for Planet desktop) or tap ⁘ to enter the Apps interface, and tap Park Assist 360 Camera or the bottom bar 360° to enter the Park Assist 360 Camera interface.
- After setting the right button ☆ on the steering wheel to Park Assist 360 Camera, press the right button ☆ on the steering wheel to enter the Park Assist 360 Camera interface.

When the vehicle is shifted to **R** gear, the Park Assist 360° Camera will be enabled automatically. If there is a fault in the camera at this time, a text fault reminder will be displayed in the surround view area.

After the vehicle is shifted to **P** gear, if there is no view switching operation in 5 seconds, the Park Assist 360 Camera will exit.

The Park Assist 360° Camera can only be enabled when the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).



1. Side view area.
2. Surround view area.
3. You can tap the corresponding view icon to have that view: front view, left view, right view and rear view.
4. Turn off the Park Assist 360 Camera.
5. Select the 3D view.
6. Select the 2D view.

7 Access the side views.

8 Dynamic trajectory line.

The dynamic trajectory line is only displayed in the front/rear 2D view.

9 Enter the Automatic Parking Assist.

10 Turn on/off the radar alarm tone.

11 Enter the exterior door mirrors adjustment interface.

12 Setting up the Park Assist 360 Camera:

Obstacle detection: Tap to turn on/off the obstacle detection function. Obstacle alarm information will not be displayed after this function is turned off.

Transparent car model: Tap to turn on/off the transparent car model. Turn on the transparent car model in the rear surround view and side views (3D view).

When the vehicle is in R gear, the 9 / 10 / 12 button is in gray and cannot be tapped.

Driver Information Display

Notes on driver information display

WARNING Risk of accident caused by driver information display failure

If the driver information display fails, you may not recognize the functional limitations of safety related systems.

The operating safety of the vehicle may be affected.

- ► Drive carefully.
- ► Park the vehicle as soon as possible and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

WARNING Risk of interference caused by information system and communication equipment

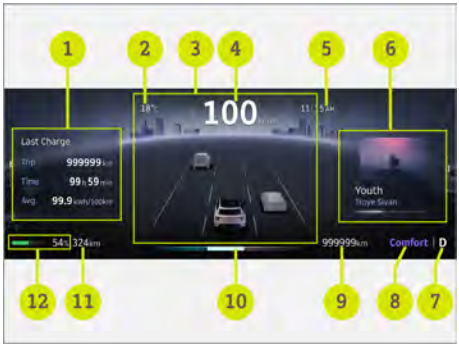
If you operate the on-board integrated information system and communication equipment while driving, you may be distracted from the traffic situation, which may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

- ► Pay attention to the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the equipment.

Overview of driver information display

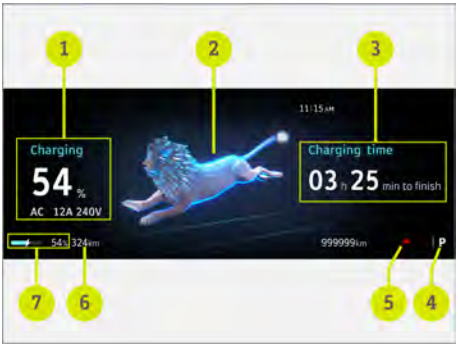
The illustrations used below are for reference only. The actual vehicle shall prevail.

During driving, the driver information display shows the following:



1. **Information display area**: Trip computer/tyre pressure/G-FORCE (if equipped)
2. Display the outside temperature
3. **Information display area:** Driver assistance information/general alarm pop-up window/charging information
4. Display the current vehicle speed
5. Display the time
6. **Information display area:** Media information/call information/navigation information/general alarm pop-up window
7. Display the gear
8. Display the drive mode
9. Display the odometer
10. Power meter/regenerative braking meter
11. Display the range
12. Display the SOC of the high voltage battery

During charging/discharging, the driver information display shows the following:



1 **Charging display area:** Display the current SOC/charging current and voltage
2 Display the charging animation
3 Display the charging time
4 Display the gear
5 Display the charging/discharging gun connected state
6 Display the range
7 Display the SOC of the high voltage battery

During charging/discharging, the battery status can be checked on the driver information display.

Door status display



When the vehicle is in P / D / R gear, if any of the doors, the bonnet, the liftgate or the charging port cover is open, the door status indicator lamp will indicate the open state (red in the corresponding door area), and an alarm tone will sound to remind the driver of the status of the corresponding door.

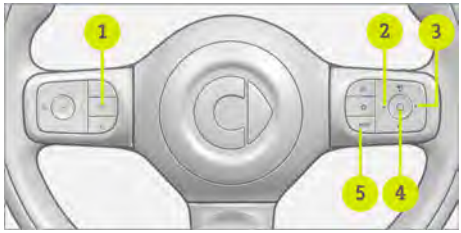
When there is a tyre pressure warning, it will be displayed on the driver information display.



When the tyre pressure is abnormal, the driver information display indicates a tyre pressure warning to remind the driver to pay attention.

Operating the driver information display

When operating the driver information display, observe the local rules and regulations of the country.



1 MENU button
2 ◀ Adjustment button
3 ▶ Adjustment button
4 ▢ Setting button
5 MENU MENU button

Information display area on left side of driver information display:

Press and release 1 to set the information display area on the left side and set the information you want to view, including Post-charging trip, Post-start trip, trip meter, tyre pressure, and G-FORCE (if equipped).

Post-charging trip

- Display the driving information after the last charging, including mileage, driving

time, and average power consumption. Press and hold 1 to reset the driving information.

Post-start trip

- Display the driving information after the vehicle is started, including mileage, driving time, and average power consumption. Press and hold 1 to reset the driving information.

Trip

- Display the driving information of a single trip, including mileage, driving time, average power consumption and instant power consumption. Press and hold 1 to reset the driving information except that for instant power consumption.

Tyre pressure

- Display the current tyre pressure of the vehicle.

G-FORCE (if equipped)

- During driving, the G meter displays the force applied to the occupants in the lateral and driving directions, and the maximum value will be displayed in red in the coordinate system.

Information display area on right side of driver information display:

Press and release 5 to set the information display area on the right side and set the information you want to view, including media information, navigation information, and full-screen navigation.

Media information

- Display the media information. Press and release 2 and 3 to switch media; press and release 4 to pause/play media.

Navigation information

- Display the navigation information.

Full-screen navigation

- Entry: Press and release 5 continuously to switch to the full-screen navigation menu, and press and release 4 to enter the full-screen navigation mode.
- Exit: Press and release 5 to display the full-screen navigation exit menu, and press and release 4 to exit the full-screen navigation mode.

Call information

- When a call is incoming/outgoing, the information display area on the right will display the call information. Press and release 3 to answer the call; press and release 2 to reject/hang up the call.

Warning lamps and indicator lamps

Indicator and warning lamp icons indicate different functions and potential faults. Some warning and indicator lamp icons light up with displayed messages and/or audible signals.

After the vehicle is started, the system will conduct a self-check, and some warning lamp icons will come on for a few seconds and then go out.

During driving, if a warning lamp keeps on, please park in a safe area and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.



Low beam on indicator lamp: When the low beam is turned on, the indicator lamp will come on.



Low beam fault warning lamp: When the low beam fails, the warning lamp will come on.



High beam on indicator lamp: When the high beam is turned on, the indicator lamp will come on.



High beam fault warning lamp: When the high beam fails, the warning lamp will come on.



Adaptive High Beam ready indicator lamp/Automatic High Beam on indicator lamp: When the Adaptive High Beam is turned on and the high beam is not on or the Automatic High Beam is turned on, the indicator lamp will come on.



Adaptive High Beam on indicator lamp (if equipped): When the Adaptive High Beam is turned on and the high beam comes on, the indicator lamp will come on.



Adaptive High Beam/Automatic High Beam fault warning lamp: When the Adaptive High Beam/Automatic High Beam is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Rear fog lamp on indicator lamp: When the rear fog lamps are turned on, the indicator lamp will come on.



Position lamp on indicator lamp: When the position lamps are turned on, the indicator lamp will come on.



Position lamp fault warning lamp: When the position lamps are faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Powertrain/high voltage battery/drive motor system fault warning lamp: When the powertrain/high voltage battery/drive motor system is faulty, the warning lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.



Electric Power-assisted Steering (EPAS) performance degradation/assist level down warning lamp: When the performance of the Electric Power-assisted Steering (EPAS) is degraded or the assist level goes down, the warning lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.



Electric Power-assisted Steering (EPAS) fault – no power assist warning lamp: When there is an Electric Power-assisted Steering (EPAS) fault – no power assist, the warning lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.



Airbag fault warning lamp: When the airbag system and/or seat belt pretensioner is faulty, the warning lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.



Turn signal light indicator lamp: When the turn signal lights are turned on, the corresponding side indicator lamp flashes. When the hazard warning lights are turned on, the turn signal light indicator lamps on both sides will flash.



Adaptive Front-lighting System fault warning lamp (if equipped): When the Adaptive Front-lighting System is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Electronic Parking Brake indicator lamp: When the Electronic Parking Brake is enabled, the indicator lamp will come on.



Ready indicator lamp: When the vehicle is ready to run normally, the indicator lamp will come on.



Speed Limiting ready indicator lamp: When Speed Limiting is in Ready mode, the indicator lamp will come on.



Speed Limiting active indicator lamp: When Speed Limiting is activated, the indicator lamp will come on.



Speed Limiting fault warning lamp: When Speed Limiting is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Adaptive Cruise Control ready indicator lamp: When the Adaptive Cruise Control is in Ready mode, the indicator lamp will come on.



Adaptive Cruise Activation active indicator lamp: When the Adaptive Cruise Control is activated, the indicator lamp will come on.



Adaptive Cruise Control fault warning lamp: When the Adaptive Cruise Control is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Lane Centring Control ready indicator lamp: When the Lane Centring Control is set to the Ready mode, the indicator lamp will come on.



Lane Centring Control active indicator lamp: When the Lane Centring Control is activated, the indicator lamp will come on.



Lane Centring Control lateral control exit indicator lamp: When the lateral control of Lane Centring Control exits, the indicator lamp will come on in white.



Lane Centring Control fault warning lamp: When the Lane Centring Control is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Power limited indicator lamp: When the traction power is limited, the indicator lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.



Anti-lock Brake System fault warning lamp: If the warning lamp comes on when the vehicle is powered on or during driving, it means the Anti-lock Brake System may be faulty. In case of any

situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.


Tyre pressure abnormal warning lamp: When the tyre pressure is too low, the warning lamp will come on, and the relevant warning information will be shown on the driver information display. If the active tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty, the indicator lamp will flash for a period of time, and then remain on. In this case, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection.



In-car Life Detection System off indicator lamp: When the in-car life detection system is turned off, the indicator lamp will come on.


Braking performance degraded/ braking distance increased warning lamp: When the system detects reduced braking performance and increased braking distance, the warning lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.


Brake system fault warning lamp: When it is detected that the brake system fails, the warning lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.


High voltage battery low indicator lamp: When the high voltage battery is low, the indicator lamp will come on.



s-Pedal on indicator lamp: When the s-Pedal mode is turned on but not activated, the indicator lamp will come on.



s-Pedal Active indicator lamp: When the s-Pedal mode is activated, the indicator lamp will come on.



Body stability control system off indicator lamp: When the body stability control system is off, the indicator lamp will come on. For vehicles with Off-road mode, the indicator lamp will also come on when the drive mode is set to Sand, Mud, Adaptive, or Rock mode.


Electronic Stability Control fault warning lamp: When the Electronic Stability Control is faulty, the warning lamp will come on. In case of a situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It may be dangerous to continue driving. When the Electronic Stability Control is working, the warning lamp will flash.


Driver Monitoring System level 1 fatigue indicator lamp: When the Driver Monitoring System detects that the driver has mild fatigue, the indicator lamp will flash.


Driver Monitoring System level 2 fatigue indicator lamp: When the Driver Monitoring System detects that the driver has severe fatigue, the indicator lamp will flash.


Driver Monitoring System facial detection indicator: when the Driver Monitoring System sensor fails to detect the driver's face or detects that the face is excessively obstructed, the warning lamp will come on.


Driver Monitoring System fault warning lamp: when the Driver Monitoring System sensor is obstructed or malfunctioning, the warning lamp will come on.


Lane Keeping Assist fault warning lamp: When the Lane Keeping Assist is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Lane Keeping Assist off indicator lamp: When the Lane Departure Warning/ Lane Departure Prevention/Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (PLUS) System is turned off, the indicator lamp will come on.


Rear Cross Traffic Alert/Rear Collision Mitigation/Door Opening Warning/ Blind Spot Detection/Lane Change Assist fault warning lamp: When the system radar fails, the warning lamp will come on; when the system radar is not calibrated successfully, the warning lamp will flash.


Hill Descent Control ready indicator lamp: When the Hill Descent Control is set to Ready mode, the indicator lamp will come on.


Hill Descent Control active indicator lamp: When the Hill Descent Control is activated, the indicator lamp will come on.


Hill Descent Control fault warning lamp: When the Hill Descent Control is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.


Front Collision Mitigation failure warning lamp: When the Front Collision Mitigation fails, the warning lamp will come on. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner. It could be dangerous to continue driving.



Front Collision Mitigation off indicator lamp: When the Front Collision Mitigation is disabled, the indicator lamp will come on.


Charging/discharging gun connected warning lamp: When the charging/ discharging gun is connected, the warning lamp will come on.


Driver seat belt reminder warning lamp: When the system detects that the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the warning lamp will come on. Please fasten the seat belt correctly to avoid personal injury in case of accidents or emergency braking. If the warning lamp remains on after the seat belt is fastened correctly, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner immediately for inspection.



Front passenger seat belt reminder warning lamp: When the system detects that the front passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the warning lamp will come on. Please fasten the seat belt correctly to avoid personal injury in case of accidents or emergency braking. If the warning lamp remains on after the seat belt is fastened correctly, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner immediately for inspection.



Rear seat belt reminder warning lamp: When the system detects that a rear passenger is not wearing the seat belt (L for left, M for middle, and R for right), the warning lamp will come on. Please fasten the seat belt correctly to avoid personal injury in case of accidents or emergency braking. If the warning lamp remains on after the seat belt is fastened correctly, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner immediately for inspection.



Auto Hold indicator lamp: When Auto Hold is enabled, the indicator lamp will come on.



12 V battery low warning lamp: If the warning lamp comes on after the vehicle is powered on, the charging system may be faulty. In case of any situation above during normal driving, please park in a safe area immediately and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection.



Trailer hitch unlocked indicator lamp (if equipped): When the electric trailer hitch is unlocked, the indicator lamp will come on.



Trailer hitch not connected and coupling device locked indicator lamp (if equipped): When the electric trailer hitch is not connected and the coupling device is locked, the indicator lamp will come on.



Trailer hitch connected and coupling device locked indicator lamp (if equipped): When the electric trailer hitch is connected and the coupling device is locked, the indicator lamp will come on.



Towing module fault warning lamp (if equipped): When the Towing module is faulty, the warning lamp will come on.



Child lock on indicator lamp: When the child lock is turned on (L for left, and R for right), the indicator lamp will come on.

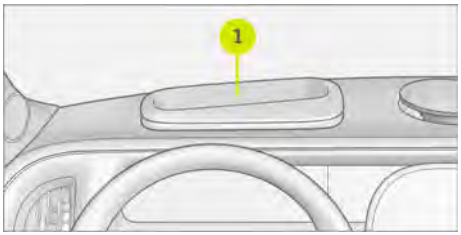


Acoustic Vehicle Alert System off indicator lamp: When the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System is turned off, the indicator lamp will come on.

Head-up display (if equipped)

Notes on the head-up display

Gently wipe the projector area 1 of the head-up display with a clean and dry microfibre cloth. If necessary, wet the microfibre cloth slightly.



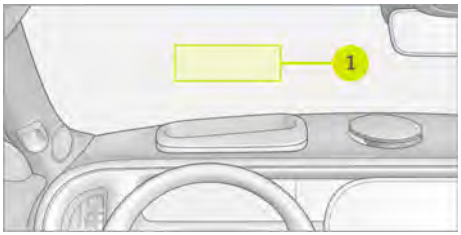
NOTE

- Avoid liquid entering the head-up display projector area. It may cause electrical failure.
- Never place any objects or stickers in the head-up display projector area or windscreen projection area. Otherwise, the head-up display may not work normally.
- Never touch the head-up display projector or throw sharp edged objects or similar objects at it. Otherwise, the head-up display may be damaged.

The vehicle with head-up display is equipped with a special type of windscreen. The correct type of windscreen must be installed to meet the requirements of image projection.

Overview of head-up display

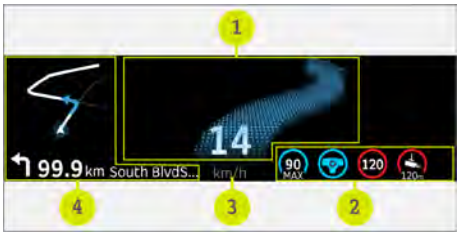
Head-up display projects image information on the windscreen in front of the driver.



1 Projection area of head-up display

Projection area of head-up display

The head-up display shows information such as vehicle speed, navigation, certain indicator lamps, certain warning messages, calls, driver assistance system information, etc. When AR mode is turned on, the head-up display will also show some AR effects.



1 Display AR effects and driver assistance system information
2 Display that drive assist is enabled
3 Display the current vehicle speed
4 Display the navigation information

When there is a serious warning for the driver assistance system, no other information will be displayed on the head-up display.

The head-up display interface may vary depending on the activated functions and the driver's setting. The illustrations are for reference only. The actual vehicle shall prevail.

Enabling/disabling the head-up display

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Quick Controls* > > *HUD Mode* and set the head-up display to **Off, 2D mode or AR mode**.
- Tap > *General* > *Head-up Display* > – *HUD Mode* and set the head-up display to **Off, 2D mode or AR mode**.

When **AR mode** is selected, the Surroundings Information option is visible. Tap the option switch to turn on/off the Surroundings Information. After Surroundings Information is turned on, the head-up display will mark potentially dangerous targets.

When **2D mode/AR mode** is selected, the Navigation Information option is visible. Tap this option to set the Navigation Information to **Off, Concise, or Detailed**.

Adjusting the head-up display

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure the position and brightness of the image projection of the head-up display do not hinder driving safety. Incorrectly adjusting the image position or brightness may hinder the driver's vision and cause accidents, resulting in personal injury and death.
- Never keep looking at the image projection of the head-up display during the journey. Otherwise, you may not see pedestrians and objects on the road in front of the vehicle.

NOTE

- When you wear polarized sunglasses, you may not see the image projection of the head-up display clearly. Adjust the brightness of head-up display or remove the sunglasses.
- You can enable/disable the snow mode on the centre display when driving in snow or the road reflection is serious.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Quick Controls* > to enter the adjustment interface.
- Tap > *General* > *Display* > *Adjust head-up display* to enter the adjustment interface.

Brightness and height adjustment

- Brightness adjustment: After this function is turned on, the adjustment information can be checked on the image projected on the head-up display; press and hold / on the right side of the steering wheel to adjust the brightness of the head-up display.
- Height adjustment: After this function is turned on, the adjustment information can be checked on the image projected on the head-up display; press and hold / on the right side of the steering wheel to adjust the height of the head-up display.

Angle adjustment

- Angle adjustment: After this function is turned on, the adjustment information can be checked on the image projected on the head-up display; press and hold / on the right side of the steering wheel to adjust the tilting angle of the head-up display.

Setting the head-up display

Turning on/off the Snow mode

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *General* > *Head-up Display* > *Snow mode* to turn on/off the Snow mode.

When the Snow mode is turned on, the colour of information displayed on the head-up display will change for easy viewing in the snow environment.

Turning on/off the Traffic Sign Recognition

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *General* > *Head-up display* > *Traffic Sign Recognition* to turn on/off the Traffic Sign Recognition.

When the Traffic Sign Recognition is turned on, the head-up display will show the traffic sign icon information.

Turning on/off the incoming/outgoing call

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *General* > *Head-up Display* > *Incoming/outgoing call* to turn on/off the incoming/outgoing call.

When incoming/outgoing call are turned on, the head-up display will show the call information if a call is incoming/outgoing.

Turning on/off the gear display

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *General* > *Head-up Display* > *Gear Display* to turn on/off the gear display.

When the gear display is turned on, the head-up display will show the gear information.

Turning on/off the s-Pedal display

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *General* > *Head-up Display* > *s-Pedal display* to turn on/off the s-Pedal display.

After the s-Pedal display is turned on, the head-up display will show the s-Pedal status indicator lamp when s-Pedal is turned on.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Overview and Operation

Notes on operating the centre display

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

When operating the centre display, be sure to observe the local laws and regulations.

Depending on the model configuration and market, the actual equipment of your vehicle may be different from the descriptions and illustrations. Refer to the actual vehicle.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the layout of centre display is similar to the left-hand drive vehicles, but some interfaces are mirrored. The specific details are subject to the vehicle delivered.

NOTE Rise of surface temperature due to direct sunlight on the centre display

If the display is exposed to direct sunlight, its surface will become very hot.

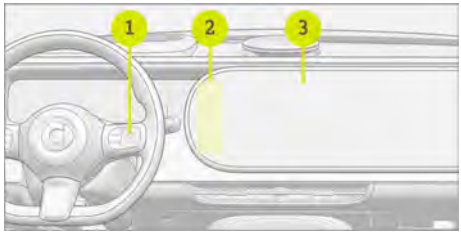
► If the centre display has been exposed to direct sunlight and its surface is dark, pay attention to the temperature of the centre display before touching it.

If you wear polarized sunglasses, it may be difficult to read the information on the centre display.

Film containing metallic substances could block radio signals. Do not apply film containing metallic substances to the windscreen, otherwise system operation could be affected.

Overview of centre display

When operating the centre display, be sure to observe the local laws and regulations of the country.



1 Control buttons on Centre display.

2 Buttons on Centre display:

Screen saver of centre display/ driver information display and passenger side display (if equipped): In driving state, press and hold the button for more than 8 seconds to restart the centre display and the passenger side display (if equipped); in non-driving state, press and hold the button for more than 8 seconds to restart the centre display, the passenger side display (if equipped) and the driver information display.

Turn on/off the hazard warning lights

Turn on/off the Climate Control

Turn on/off the windscreen max defroster function

Turn on/off the rear windscreen and exterior door mirror defrosting functions

DRIVING MODE Drive mode button

Turn on/off the quick setting interface

3 Centre display with touch function.

By operating on the centre display, you can control settings such as the multimedia, certain vehicle functions and climate control.



1 **Status bar:** Tap this area to turn on/off the Central locking/ Message notifications/ Bluetooth/ WiFi (if equipped)/ Network connection signal (if equipped)/ 09:00 Time.

2 **Main interface**: The content and layout of the main interface will change according to the desktop theme.

Planet desktop theme: The main interface may include tyre pressure/mileage, Bluetooth call, power consumption, driving information, multimedia, navigation (if equipped), weather (if equipped), virtual image, etc. Tap on the virtual image to interact with it, and quickly double-tap the virtual image to wake up the voice assistant.

3D car theme: The main interface may include 3D car model, navigation (if equipped), multimedia, Bluetooth phone, power consumption, tyre pressure/mileage, weather (if equipped), driving information, etc.

Navigation/wallpaper theme: The main interface may include navigation (if equipped), multimedia, Bluetooth phone, power consumption, tyre pressure/mileage, weather (if equipped), driving information, etc.

3 Personal Centre (if equipped): Tap , then the Personal Centre window will pop up.

4 **Bottom bar**: The bottom bar contains the following function icons. Press and hold any area of the bottom bar to enter the editing state, then you can add/delete function icons (some permanent icons cannot be deleted).

Home button: Tap to return to the main interface.

Apps: Tap to enter the Apps interface.

Settings: Tap to enter the Settings interface.

Seat: Tap to enter the Seat interface.

Driver zone temperature control area: Adjust the driver zone temperature by operating the control area; after the Climate Control is turned on, tap the temperature value to enter the Climate interface.

Fan speed: Display the fan speed level of Climate Control. Tap , then the fan speed adjustment interface will pop up.

Navigation (if equipped): Tap to enter the Navigation interface.

Multimedia: Tap to enter the Multimedia interface.

Volume Control: Tap to adjust the volume of multimedia/navigation (if equipped)/voice assistant/phone.

Task Manager: When one or more Apps are opened, press and hold to enter the Task Manager, and drag the App icon upward or tap the **Delete All**button to release the memory and quickly clean up running Apps.

When the corresponding function of the vehicle is enabled, the status bar will display the following icons:

- Vehicle location information (if equipped)
- Charging wirelessly (if equipped)
- Air quality (if equipped)

- USB

Setting the desktop theme of the centre display

- Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface, and switch different desktop themes as needed.
- Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *General* > *Display* > *Switch Theme* to switch the desktop theme as needed.

Quick Controls interface

Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface.

You can swipe up on the Quick Controls interface depending on the number of functions. The functions in the Quick Controls interface can be enabled by tapping their icons. In this interface, a function can be enabled/disabled by tapping the relevant function button. When tapped, some functions (triggered) will pop up in new windows.

Swipe up on the centre display or tap the blank area of the centre display to go back to the previous interface.

Apps interface

Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to access the Apps interface, where downloaded Apps (third-party Apps) and embedded Apps can be found, such as Multimedia.

Tap the App to open it, which will be open in the subinterface, such as Phone.

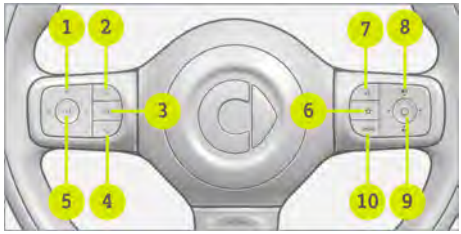
According to the number of Apps, swipe left from the right of the centre display in the Apps interface. For some Apps, you can press and hold them, and then drag them or tap to delete them.

Tap to go back to the main interface again.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Overview of the steering wheel buttons

When operating the buttons on the steering wheel, please observe the local laws and regulations.



1 Control panel:
+ Speed adjustment: Press and release to increase the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press and hold to increase the speed by 5 km/h (3 mph); press and hold to continuously adjust the speed, and release to stop adjustment.
− Speed adjustment: Press and release to decrease the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press and hold to decrease the speed by 5 km/h (3 mph); press and hold to continuously adjust the speed, and release to stop adjustment.
Function selection: Press and release to select the Adaptive Cruise Control/Speed Limiting/Lane Centring Control.
Following distance adjustment: Press and release to adjust the following distance, which is level 3 by default and can be cycled through in a level-down way.

2 Resume: Activate the last selected driver assistance function.

3 Menu button: Press and release to set the menu page in the left area on the driver information display, or press and hold to reset the trip information.

4 Disable: Disable the Adaptive Cruise Control/Speed Limiting/Lane Centring Control.

5 Enable: Enable the Adaptive Cruise Control/Speed Limiting/Lane Centring Control.

6 Favourites button on steering wheel: The default setting is Mute/Unmute. This button can be set to Mute/Unmute, Enter/Exit Park Assist 360 Camera, Enter Navigation, Media Audio Source Switch, Regenerative Braking Level Switch, Drive Mode Switch, Passenger Side Display Screen Off (if equipped), One-touch Setting, etc.

7 Voice control button: Press and release to enable/disable the voice input; press and hold to connect the CarPlay/Android Auto.

8 Control panel:

Adjustment button: Press and release to increase the volume, or adjust the head-up display (if equipped) and exterior door mirrors; press and hold to perform continuous adjustment, and release to stop adjustment.

Adjustment button: Press and release to decrease the volume, or adjust the head-up display (if equipped) and exterior door mirrors; press and hold to perform continuous adjustment, and release to stop adjustment.

Adjustment button: Press and release to reject calls/switch media/select message notifications/switch trip information/adjust the head-up display (if equipped) or exterior door mirrors; press and hold to adjust the head-up display (if equipped) or exterior door mirrors continuously, and release to stop adjustment.

Adjustment button: Press and release to answer calls/switch media/select message notifications/switch trip information/adjust the head-up display (if equipped) or exterior door mirrors; press and hold to adjust the head-up display (if equipped) or exterior door mirrors continuously, and release to stop adjustment.

9 Setting button: Press and release to pause or play music/turn off messages, and confirm the selection.

10 MENU MENU button: Press and release to set the menu page in the right area on the driver information display.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Quick Controls Interface

Quick Controls interface

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

▶ Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Depending on the model configuration and market, the actual equipment of your vehicle may be different from the descriptions and illustrations. Refer to the actual vehicle.

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface.



1 Mode selection area
2 Function area
3 Volume adjustment area
4 Brightness adjustment area
5 Desktop theme selection area

Function area

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface.

The function area is on the left side of the Quick Controls interface, allowing for the following operations:

- Parking sensor: Tap to turn on/off the parking sensors.
- Window ventilation: Tap to open windows for ventilation.
- Reading lamp: Tap to turn on/off the reading lamps.
- Unfolding/folding exterior door mirrors: Tap to unfold/fold the exterior door mirrors.
- Passenger side display screen off (if equipped): Tap to enter the passenger side display screen off state.
- Open the bonnet: Tap to open the bonnet.
- Open/close the liftgate: Tap to open/close the liftgate.
- Power Off: Tap to power off the vehicle.
- Close all windows: Tap to close all windows fully.
- Open all windows: Tap to open all windows fully.
- Approach to Unlock: Tap to turn on/off the Approach to Unlock.
- Walk Away to Lock: Tap to turn on/off the Walk Away to Lock.
- Head-up display (if equipped): Tap to turn on/off the head-up display.
- Wireless charging: Tap to turn on/off the wireless charging function.
- Active Sound Control (if equipped): Tap to turn on/off the Active Sound Control.
- Driver fatigue monitoring: Tap to turn on/off the driver fatigue monitoring.
- Driver distraction monitoring: Tap to turn on/off the driver distraction monitoring.
- Screen Cleaning: Tap to turn on/off the Screen Cleaning mode.
- Ambient light: Tap to turn on/off the ambient light.
- Centre display screen off: Tap to enter the centre display screen off state.
- In-car life detection: Tap to turn off the in-car life detection function.
- Drive setup: Tap Drive setup to apply the previously saved settings.

Press and hold the icon or tap to enable the editing function, and then customize the icon sequence, delete icons, or add icons.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Brightness adjustment area

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface. The middle right side of the Quick Controls interface is the brightness adjustment area.

Drag the slider left and right to adjust the brightness of the centre display. Tap **Auto** to turn on the auto brightness mode, then the centre display will automatically adjust the brightness according to the light of the surrounding environment.

Message & notification area

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface.

The upper right side of the Quick Controls interface is the message notification area, where you can view the message content and historical messages. Swipe right on the message content, and tap  to delete the message notification.

Mode selection area

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface. The middle right side of the Quick Controls interface is the mode selection area. Tap the mode button to enter the mode details interface, and tap  to enter the scenario mode interface.

Rest mode

Rest mode: Tap the **Driver side** button to turn on the driver rest mode, and tap the **Front passenger side** button to turn on the front passenger rest mode.

The user can set the alarm clock as needed. To turn off the Rest mode, swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface, and tap **Off**.

After the Rest mode is turned on, the windows and sunshades will be closed, the reading lamps and ambient lights will be turned off, and the central lock will be locked.

If the user sets the headlamps to turn off, the headlamps will turn off by default when this mode is turned on.

If the user sets the temperature/fan speed of Climate Control, the Climate Control will be adjusted to the target values when this mode is turned on. The default temperature is 24°C and the default fan speed is level 3.

Alarm clock: When the Rest mode is turned on, the alarm clock can be set as needed.

Screen saver: When the Rest mode is turned on, tap the Screen Saver button, then the centre display and the passenger side display (if equipped) will switch to the dynamic screen saver mode, accompanied by exclusive white noise for the corresponding screen saver. You can switch among various screen saver themes in the current interface. You can turn on/off the white noise through the mute switch.

Screen off: When the Rest mode is turned on, tap the screen off button, then the head-up display (if equipped), driver information display, centre display and passenger side display (if equipped) will switch to the screen off state. Tap the centre display or passenger side display (if equipped) to exit the screen off state.

Pet mode

Pet mode: Tap the **On** button to turn on the Pet mode.

If you need to turn off the Pet mode, swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface and tap **Off**, or enter the scenario mode interface and tap the Pet mode switch to turn off the Pet mode.

When the Pet mode is turned on, the system will automatically close the windows and adjust the inside temperature. After the driver gets out of and locks the vehicle, the system will switch the centre display and the passenger side display (if equipped) to the screen saver mode and disable the window switches to avoid operations due to touch by the pet.

If the user sets the headlamps to turn off, the headlamps will turn off by default when this mode is turned on.

Car Wash mode

Car Wash mode: Tap the **On** button to turn on the Car Wash mode.

If you need to turn off the Car Wash mode, swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface and tap **Off**, or enter the scenario mode interface and tap the Pet mode switch to turn off the Car Wash mode. If the vehicle speed is greater

than 15 km/h (10 mph), the Car Wash mode will also automatically exit.

When the Car Wash mode is turned on, windows will be automatically closed, the charging port cover will be automatically locked, the liftgate kick-to-open function (if equipped), Auto Wiper, Keyless Entry, and Approach to Unlock/Walk Away to Lock will be disabled simultaneously, and the Climate Control will be switched to the Re-circulation mode.

If the user sets the headlamps to turn off, the headlamps will turn off by default when this mode is turned on.

Screen cleaning mode: Tap to turn on the screen cleaning mode.

Folding exterior door mirrors: Tap to fold/unfold the exterior door mirrors.

Camping mode

Camping mode: Tap the **On** button to turn on the Camping mode.

If you need to turn off the Camping mode, swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface and tap **Off**, or enter the scenario mode interface and tap the Camp mode switch to turn off the Camp mode.

If the user sets the headlamps to turn off, the headlamps will turn off by default when this mode is turned on.

If the user sets the temperature/fan speed of Climate Control, the Climate Control will be adjusted to the target values when this mode is turned on. The default temperature is 24°C and the default fan speed is level 3.

Camping bed: When the Camping mode is turned on, you can turn on the single bed, double bed and queen-size bed mode following the prompts.

Alarm clock: When the Camping mode is turned on, you can set the alarm clock as needed.

Screen saver: When the Camping mode is turned on, tap the Screen Saver button, then the centre display and the passenger side display (if equipped) will switch to the dynamic screen saver mode, accompanied by exclusive white noise for the corresponding screen saver. You can switch among various screen saver themes in the current interface. You can turn on/off the white noise through the mute switch.

Screen off: When the Camping mode is turned on, tap the screen off button, then the head-up display (if equipped), driver information display, centre display and passenger side display (if equipped) will switch to the screen off state. Tap the centre display or passenger side display (if equipped) to exit the screen off state.

ECO + mode

ECO + mode: Tap the **On** button to turn on the ECO + mode.

If you need to turn off the ECO + mode, swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface and tap **Off**, or enter the scenario mode interface and tap the ECO + mode switch to turn off the ECO + mode.

After the ECO + mode is turned on, the system will turn off the Climate Control, ambient light, seat heating, seat ventilation (if equipped), and the like, and adjust the drive mode to ECO.

Energise mode

Energise mode: Tap the **On** button to turn on the Energise mode.

If you need to turn off the Energise mode, swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface and tap **Off**. Alternatively, you can wait for 180 seconds till the Energise mode turns off automatically, or enter the scenario mode interface and tap the Energise mode switch to turn off the Energise mode.

After the Energise mode is turned on, the system will turn on the Climate Control, seat ventilation (if equipped), etc.

Connection to driver fatigue monitoring: The Driver Monitoring System, after being turned on, may be connected to the Energise mode.

Parking Comfort mode

Parking Comfort mode: Set the parking time, tap the **On** button to enable the

Parking Comfort mode, or set the Parking Comfort mode to “Always On”.

If you need to turn off the Parking Comfort mode, swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface and tap **Off**. Alternatively, you can wait till the Parking Comfort mode expires, or enter the scenario mode interface and tap the Pet mode switch to turn off the Parking Comfort mode.

After the Parking Comfort mode is enabled, some functions such as Climate Control and entertainment screen will remain on.

After the parking comfort mode is turned on, the vehicle will continue to consume electricity. The traction battery will automatically turn off when the battery SOC drops to 20%.

After the Rest mode, Pet mode or Camping mode is turned on, the Parking Comfort mode will be automatically turned on.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Desktop theme selection area

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface. The lower right side of the Quick Controls interface is the desktop theme selection area.

The desktop theme can be set to **Planet**, **3D car**, **Navigation** and **Custom**. After the setting is successful, the desktop theme of the centre display will be adjusted to the corresponding theme.

Volume adjustment area

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the centre display to enter the Quick Controls interface. The middle right side of the Quick Controls interface is the brightness adjustment area.

Drag the slider left and right to adjust the volume. Tap to turn on mute/unmute.

Setting Interface

Overview of setting interface

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.



1 Function selection area:

- Quick Controls
- Lights
- Ambient Light
- Driving Assistance
- Vehicle Settings
- General
- Energy Management
- Intelligent Speech
- Vehicle Condition

- System
- Privacy
- Storage management

2 Function operation area

Quick Controls

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

▶ Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

The following operations can be performed in the Quick Controls interface:

- Child lock: Tap to enter the child lock setting interface, then you can turn on/off the corresponding child lock as needed.
- Exterior door mirror adjustment: Adjust the exterior door mirrors. Tap **Exterior Door Mirror** to enter the adjustment interface, then select **Left** or **Right**, and operate the buttons , , and on the right side of the steering wheel to make adjustments.
- HUD adjustment (if equipped): Tap to enter the head-up display adjustment interface, then turn on/off the head-up display, and adjust its height/brightness and angle.
- Favourites button: The user can set the function of the favourites button on the steering wheel as needed.
- Liftgate height presetting: Tap to enter the liftgate height setting interface, and adjust the liftgate height as required.
- Drive setup:
  - Used for drive setup of multiple functions. Click to enter the Drive setup interface. Users can preset regenerative braking, driving mode, intelligent adaptive cruise control, lane change assist, lane departure prevention, emergency lane keep assist, evasive manoeuvre assist, parking emergency braking, driver fatigue warning, driver distraction warning, active speed limit warning and other functions. All configured functions will be automatically selected. Click **Save and Activate** to save and apply the settings immediately, and click **Save** to save the current settings, and click **Reset to defaults**, all settings will be restored to their default state.
  - Users can also slide down on the centre display to enter the shortcut interface and click **Drive setup** to apply the previously saved settings. Or press **Favourites button** on the steering wheel to activate the previously saved settings.

Tap the function icon on the 3D car model to control the corresponding function:

- : Tap to open the bonnet.
- : Tap to fold/unfold the exterior door mirrors.
- : Tap to open/close the charging port cover.
- : Tap to open the liftgate.
- : Tap to close the liftgate.
- : Tap to enter the sunroof sunshade control interface, and drag the slider or select the corresponding position to adjust the sunroof sunshade.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Lights

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

The following operations can be performed in the light control interface:

- Headlamp Leveling (if equipped): Set the height of the headlamps. The user can select the headlamp height position as needed.
- (If equipped): Tap to turn on/off the Adaptive Front-lighting System.
- AUTO: Tap to turn on the Auto Headlamp.
- : Tap to turn on the low beam.
- : Tap to turn on the position lamps.
- OFF: Tap to turn off the exterior lights (except daytime running lights).
- : Tap to turn on/off the rear fog lamps.
- Reading lamp: Tap to bring up the reading lamp control interface, then tap to turn on/off the reading lamp in the corresponding position, and tap **Reading lamp** to turn on/off all reading lamps.
- Ambient lights
  Intelligent High Beam: Tap to turn on/off the Intelligent High Beam.
  Follow me home: Set the turn-off delay time of headlamps when the vehicle is locked. The user can select the turn-off delay time as needed.
  Approach Lighting: Tap to turn on/off the Approach Lighting.
  Courtesy light: Tap to turn on/off the courtesy light.
  Decorative light: Tap to turn on/off the decorative light.
  Rainy day light: Tap to turn on/off the rainy day light. After this function is turned on, low beams will be automatically turned on when it is a rainy day.
- Courtesy light: Set the courtesy light type. Tap to bring up the courtesy light control interface, and select the courtesy light type.
- Light language: Switch different light languages according to the usage scenario.
  Light show linkage: Turn on/off the light show linkage.
  Star mode: When this mode is enabled, the front centre position lamp will come on along with the daytime running lights.
  Night reading mode: When this mode is enabled, all reading lamps will come on, and the ambient light will be adjusted to personalized mode.
  Hibernation mode: When this mode is enabled, the interior and exterior lights will turn off, the sunshade will be closed, and the screens of the head-up display (if equipped), driver information display, centre display and passenger side display (if equipped) will be turned off.
- Trailer light (if equipped)
  Trailer Lamp check: Tap **Check** to enter the trailer light self-check process.
  Automatic Trailer Lamp check: Tap to turn on/off the trailer light auto check.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Ambient light

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

Ambient light is used to ensure that the interior of the vehicle is not too dark during driving, and also to create a pleasant driving environment.

- Turning on/off the ambient light: Tap to turn on/off the ambient light.
- Ambient light mode:
  - Customize: The user can customize the colour (single, dual, and theme) of the ambient light as desired.

    When the dual-color mode is set and the color interaction function is turned on, the dual-color area of the ambient light interactively changes the light color according to the design.

  - Drive mode: The ambient light will change colour with different drive modes.
  - Random colour: The colour of the ambient light keeps changing after a while.
- Brightness adjustment: Drag the brightness bar to adjust the brightness of the ambient light.
- Ambient light setting: Tap to enter the ambient light setting interface, and then turn on/off **Courtesy ambient light**, **Ambient Light Adaption to Climate**, **Liftable speaker with ambient light (if equipped)** and **Charging ambient light**.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Driving assistance

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

Most options of the function switch are marked with the icon ⓘ. You can tap ⓘ to view the corresponding function description for a quick understanding of the function.

Safety

Front Collision Risk Warning and Braking Assist: Set the warning mode of Front Collision Warning.

Front Collision Risk Warning sensitivity: Set the sensitivity of Front Collision Warning.

Front Cross Traffic Warning: Tap to turn on/off the Front Cross Traffic Warning.

Rear Collision Warning: Tap to turn on/off the Rear Collision Warning.

Rear Cross Traffic Warning and Braking Assist: Set the warning mode of Rear Cross Traffic Warning and Braking Assist.

Blind Spot Warning: Set the warning mode of Blind Spot Warning.

- Detailed Blind Spot Warning: Tap to turn on/off the Detailed Blind Spot Warning.

Door Opening Warning: Tap to turn on/off the Door Opening Warning.

Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control: Tap to turn on/off the Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.

Assistance

Lane Departure Warning: Set the warning mode of Lane Departure Warning.

Lane Departure Prevention: Set the warning mode of Lane Departure Prevention.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist: Tap to turn on/off the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist.

Lane Keeping Assist Sensitivity: Set the sensitivity of Lane Keeping Assist.

Lane Change Assist: Tap to turn on/off the Lane Change Assist.

Parking Emergency Braking: Tap to turn on/off the Parking Emergency Brake.

Steering assist camera: Set the mode of steering assist camera.

Evasive Manoeuvre Assist: Tap to turn on/off the Evasive Manoeuvre Assist.

Driving Sound Assistance: Set the Driving Assist Broadcast Mode.

Driver Fatigue Warning: Tap to turn on/off the Driver Fatigue Warning.

Driver Distraction Warning: Tap to turn on/off the Driver Distraction Warning.

Traffic Sign Recognition

- Active speed limit warning: Tap to turn on/off the Active speed limit warning.
- Warning method: The warning method can be set to Visual, or Visual and audio.

Manual speed limit: Turn on/off the Manual speed limit. The warning speed is adjustable after the function is enabled.

Speed Limit Update Tone: Tap to turn on/off the Speed Limit Update Tone.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Vehicle Settings

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

Driving

Drive mode: Switch drive modes as needed.

Restore: Tap to restore the default settings of each item in the current drive mode by one touch.

Steering Control: Set the steering control.

Regenerative Braking: Set the Regenerative Braking level.

Brake Level: Set the Brake level.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC): Set the Electronic Stability Control Off or switch its modes.

Auto Hold: Tap to turn on/off the Auto Hold.

Electronic Parking Brake: Tap to apply/release the Electronic Parking Brake.

Smooth braking: Tap to turn on/off the smooth braking.

Off-centre steering wheel alert: Tap to turn on/off the Off-centre steering wheel alert.

s-Pedal: Tap to turn on/off s-Pedal.

Automatic hitch extension (if equipped): Tap to release/retract the automatic hitch extension.

Hill Descent Control: Tap to turn on/off the Hill Descent Control.

Rocket Launch (if equipped): Tap to turn on/off the Rocket Launch.

Vehicle Control

Car Search Alarm: Set the car search alarm mode.

Vehicle lock associated settings

- Auto Window Closing while Locking: Tap to turn on/off the Auto Window Closing while Locking.
- Auto Sunroof Sunshade Closing while Locking: Tap to turn on/off the Auto Sunroof Sunshade Closing while Locking.
- Auto Folding Exterior Door Mirrors while Locking: Tap to turn on/off the Auto Folding Exterior Door Mirrors while Locking.

Left Exterior Door Mirror Tilt-down while Reversing: Tap to turn on/off the Left Exterior Door Mirror Tilt-down while Reversing.

Right Exterior Door Mirror Tilt-down while Reversing: Tap to turn on/off the Right Exterior Door Mirror Tilt-down while Reversing.

Rear Wiper Off While Reversing: Tap to turn on/off the Rear Wiper Off While Reversing.

Child locks

- Left rear window lock: Tap to turn on/off the left rear window lock.
- Right rear window lock: Tap to turn on/off the right rear window lock.
- Left rear door lock: Tap to turn on/off the left rear door lock.
- Right rear door lock: Tap to turn on/off the right rear door lock.

Unlock settings

- Approach to Unlock: Tap to turn on/off the Approach to Unlock.
- Walk Away to Lock: Tap to turn on/off the Walk Away to Lock.
- Touch Unlock: Set the Touch Unlock mode.
- Double Click Unlock: Tap to turn on/off the Double Click Unlock.

Auto Unlock in P Gear: Tap to turn on/off the Auto Unlock in P Gear.

Lock Tone: Tap to turn on/off the lock tone.

Easy Entry/Exit (Driver): Set the Easy Entry/Exit (Driver).

Easy Entry/Exit (Front Passenger): Set the Easy Entry/Exit (Front Passenger).

Temporary Disarm: Tap to turn on/off the Temporary Disarm.

Power Off: Tap to power off the vehicle.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Sound

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

▶ Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

The following operations can be performed in the Sound interface:

Sound effect adjustment: Set the multimedia sound effect.

This product is manufactured under the license of Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Unpublished confidential work. ©2012–2024 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

Dazzling Soud (if equipped): Set the dazzling sound effect. Tap **More** to jump to Dazzling Soud APP.

Immersion: Set the immersion level.

Bass: Set the bass level.

Volume adjust: Tap to adjust the volume of media, navigation, voice output, phone, ringtone and announcement.

Equalizer adjustment (if equipped): Adjust the equalizer.

Audio trial: Click a sound effect for an audio trial.

Virtual engine (if equipped): Choose different engine sound effects.

Speed-based volume adjustment: Set the volume adjustment adapting to the vehicle speed.

Indicator volume: Set the alarm volume.

Touchscreen clicks: Tap to turn on/off the touch tone.

Driving Mode sound effects: Tap to turn on/off the drive mode sound effect.

Volume reduction in R gear: Tap to turn on/off the Lower Multimedia Volume while Reversing.

Volume reduction when opening doors: Tap to turn on/off the Lower Media Tone while Opening Door.

Resume playback: Tap to turn on/off the Resume Media after Start.

Navigation volume mixer: Set the Navigation Audio Mixing effect.

- Automatic mixing: When navigation and multimedia are playing simultaneously, the system will lower the volume of the multimedia.
- Direct mixing: When navigation and multimedia are playing simultaneously, the system does not lower the volume.

Voice mixing: Set the voice mixing effect.

- Multimedia mute: When the multimedia and voice broadcast are playing simultaneously, the system will mute the multimedia audio.
- Multimedia volume reduction: When the multimedia and voice broadcast are playing simultaneously, the system will lower the volume of the multimedia.
- Direct mixing: When the multimedia and voice broadcast are playing simultaneously, the system does not lower the volume.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System: Set the Acoustic Vehicle Alert System.

General

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

Head-up display (if equipped)

HUD mode: Turn off the head-up display or switch the display mode.

Environment information: Is displayed only when the HUD mode is set to **AR mode**. Tap to turn on/off the environment information.

Navigation information: Set the navigation display information.

Adjust head-up display: Adjust the head-up display.

Snow mode: Tap to turn on/off the Snow mode.

Traffic Sign Recognition: Tap to turn on/off the Traffic Sign Recognition.

Incoming/outgoing call: Tap to turn on/off the incoming/outgoing call reminders.

Gear display: Tap to turn on/off the gear display.

s-Pedal display: Tap to turn on/off the s-Pedal status display.

Display

Wallpaper switch: Select the corresponding desktop theme.

Static avatar: tap Static Avatar to turn on/off the static avatar.

Screen saver mode: Tap to turn on/off the screen saver mode, and tap the image to select the corresponding screen saver wallpaper.

Automatic passenger screen Sleep Mode settings (if equipped): Set the screen timeout of the passenger side display.

Brightness adjustment

- Instrument screen brightness: Tap **Auto Brightness** or drag the slider to adjust the instrument display brightness.
- Driver screen brightness: Tap **Auto** or drag the slider to adjust the brightness of the centre display.
- Passenger screen brightness (if equipped): Tap **Auto** or drag the slider to adjust the brightness of the passenger side display.
- Hard button backlight: Drag the slider to adjust the button backlight brightness.

Screen sleep

- Driver screen sleep: Tap to enter the centre display screen off state.
- Passenger screen sleep (if equipped): Tap to enter the passenger side display screen off state.

Automatically activate screen when passenger is present: Tap to turn on/off the screen fast start.

Screen cleaning: Tap to enter the screen cleaning mode. Press and hold to exit the screen cleaning mode.

Connectivity

5G network: Set the network type.

Wireless charging: Tap to turn on/off the wireless charging function.

Bluetooth: Tap to turn on/off Bluetooth, set the device name, search for the Bluetooth handle, view the connected Bluetooth devices and the found Bluetooth devices, delete Bluetooth devices, or reselect the Bluetooth devices you want to connect.

Wi-Fi: Tap to turn on/off Wi-Fi, view the connected and available networks, and reselect the network you want to connect.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Energy management

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Energy Management interface:

- Tap > *Energy Management*.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the Planet desktop) or tap > > *Energy Management*.
- When the charging/discharging gun is connected, the system will automatically enter the energy management interface.

Charging

Range: Tap **Standard** or **Dynamic** to view the range.

Car model icon: Display the SOC of the battery. Drag the battery area to set the target SOC of charging.

Manual temperature adjustment: After this function is turned on, the battery will automatically adjust into the optimal operating temperature range. It is recommended that this function be turned on for temperature adjustment when the snowflake icon appears on the battery icon at the bottom left of the driver information display.

Schedule Charging: Tap to enter the Schedule Charging interface, and tap the master switch of **Schedule Charging** to turn on/off Schedule Charging. After Schedule Charging is turned on, the user can set the start time of charging as needed. If the **End charging after reaching the target battery level** is switched on, charging will continue when the high voltage battery has not reached the target SOC at the set end time of the Schedule Charging. In this case, the charging process will continue to reach the target SOC before ending.

Scheduled departure: After this function is enabled, the vehicle will turn on the battery temperature adjustment and cab temperature control functions in advance according to the set departure time.

AC charging current: Set the AC charging current.

Charging setting

- Battery temperature auto regulation: After this function is turned on, if you drive to a charging station through navigation, the battery temperature, if too low or too high, will be intelligently adjusted to improve the charging efficiency and reduce the charging time. Please be aware that the vehicle will consume extra power after this function is turned on.

Discharging

Car model icon: Display the SOC of the battery. Drag/tap the battery area to adjust the target SOC for discharging.

Discharging log: Tap to view the discharging log.

ⓘ The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Intelligent Speech

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

Voice

Voice assistant: Tap to turn on/off the voice assistant.

Wake-up word recognition zone: Set the wake-up word recognition zone.

Continuous conversation listening delay time: Set the continuous conversation listening delay time.

Wake-up word setting: Tap to customize the wake-up word.

Driver wake-up free: Tap to turn on/off the driver wake-up free function.

Delete cloud data: Tap the button to delete the cloud data.

Online/offline: Tap to switch the voice control mode.

Voiceprint recognition: Tap to turn on/off the voiceprint recognition.

Daily Quote: Tap to turn on/off the Daily Quote.

Studio

The user can choose **Special Recommendation** or **Personal Voice** according to personal preference.

Skill library

The following information can be viewed in the skill library interface:

- Basic features
- Skill library

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Vehicle condition

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

My Car

Maintenance Information Card: Display the maintenance mileage information. Tap the button **Reset** to reset the maintenance mileage information while driving.

Licence Plate Number: Tap to set the licence plate number.

VIN: Display the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Motor number: Display the drive motor number of the vehicle.

Front Wiper Maintenance Mode: Tap to turn on/off the Front Wiper Maintenance Mode.

Rescue mode: Tap to turn on/off the Rescue mode.

Emergency Call: Set the Emergency Call mode.

Tyre Condition Card: Display the tyre pressure and tyre temperature.

Driving Statistics

Historical energy consumption: Tap to view the historical energy consumption information.

Power consumption statistics: Tap to view the power consumption statistics information.

Post-charging trip card: Display the trip information after charging.

Post-start trip card: Display the trip information after start.

- Smart tips for current mileage information: Tap the switch to turn on/off the smart tips for current mileage information. When this function is turned on, after each trip (mileage exceeds 5 km and the vehicle is shifted into P gear), the trip statistics will automatically pop up in the Planet Desktop card.

Trip meter card: Display the trip information after the last resetting.

- Reset: Tap the button **Reset** to reset the trip meter information.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

System

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- In the main interface, tap to enter the Settings interface.

- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap  to enter the Apps interface, and tap  to enter the Settings interface.

OTA upgrade (if equipped)

The vehicle software can be upgraded remotely and wirelessly to gain new features, bringing better performance and richer features.

Tap **Check for Updates** and manually check whether there is a new version to update; tap **Version information** to view the current version details of the vehicle system; tap **Upgrade Now** to view the introduction of the updateable software and choose to update immediately or schedule the update time.

If the network is abnormal or the network connection is not smooth, tap **Network Reset** for update. If the network is still abnormal, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Auto Upgrade at Night: Tap to turn on/off the Auto Upgrade at Night.

Factory Reset: Tap to restore the system to the factory default settings.

Some markets only support OTA updates in a Wi-Fi environment. If you have any questions, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

NOTE

- Do not perform OTA upgrade in places that affect traffic.
- Do not perform OTA upgrade in places with poor network signal.
- The vehicle cannot be operated during OTA upgrade. Please take articles you need out of the vehicle before OTA upgrade.
- If the vehicle is unlocked at the end of the countdown, the OTA upgrade cannot be performed. Please re-execute the OTA update process.
- During the OTA upgrade of the vehicle, if the prompt of upgrade failure or update delay pops up on the centre display, please check whether the vehicle meets the OTA upgrade conditions before re-performing the OTA upgrade operation. If the vehicle still cannot be upgraded, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Notifications and Privacy

Notification push: Tap to turn on/off the Notification Push. Select the prompt type option to set the notification prompt type.

Avatar voice broadcast: Tap to turn on/off the Avatar voice broadcast.

Permission management: Set permissions of APPs.

Language and Unit

Language: Set the language of the display.

Time Zone: Set the time zone displayed on the display.

Temperature: Set the temperature display unit.

Speed: Set the speed display unit.

Tyre pressure: Set the tyre pressure display unit.

Time format: Set the time display format.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Privacy

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

When the telematics service switch (if equipped) is turned off, the vehicle is in a full privacy state. In this state, the vehicle positioning (if equipped) and voice service switches (if equipped) are turned off and cannot be operated. When the telematics service switch (if equipped) is turned on, the vehicle positioning (if equipped) and voice service switches (if equipped) can be selected.

Vehicle positioning (if equipped): Tap to turn on/off the vehicle positioning function. The effective period of the switch can be set to **One time** or **12 months**.

Voice service (if equipped): Tap to turn on/off the voice service. The effective period of the switch can be set to **One time** or **12 months**.

OTA (if equipped): Tap to turn on/off the OTA.

Network security monitoring (if equipped): Tap to turn on/off the network security monitoring function.

User Agreement: View the content of the User Agreement.

Privacy Policy: View the content of the Privacy Policy.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Storage management

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap to enter the Settings interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Settings interface.

The storage management interface displays the current memory usage of the AVN (audio, video, navigation). Tap **Clear up** to clear up the memory as needed. Tap **Refresh** to refresh the memory usage.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Seat interface

Seat interface

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the seat interface:

- Tap to enter the seat interface.



1 Ventilation/heating
2 Seat adjustment

Ventilation/heating

Enter the seat interface:

- Tap > *Ventilation/Heating*.

Steering wheel heating: Tap the button on the steering wheel model repeatedly to cycle through the heating levels. The user can select the heating level as needed.

Seat heating: Tap the button on the seat model repeatedly to cycle through the heating levels. The user can select the heating level as needed.

Seat ventilation (if equipped): Tap the button on the seat model repeatedly to cycle through the ventilation levels. The user can select the ventilation level as needed.

Seat adjustment

Enter the seat interface:

- Tap > *Seat Adjustment*.

Select the driver/front passenger/rear seat model and switch to the corresponding adjustment interface:

- Tap the seat cushion adjustment button to adjust the seat forward and backward.
- Tap the seat backrest adjustment button to adjust the seat backrest angle.

Navigation and Traffic

Navigation (if equipped)

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Film containing metallic substances could block radio signals. Do not apply film containing metallic substances to the windscreen, otherwise system operation could be affected.

Enter the navigation interface:

- Tap in the bottom bar to enter the navigation interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap **Map** to enter the navigation interface.

Tap the shortcut icon in the main interface to enter the navigation interface.



1 View the navigation history or search for destinations
2 Quickly search for parking lots
3 Quickly search for charging piles

The illustrations and descriptions are for reference only. The shortcut icons on the main interface may vary depending on the desktop theme. The actual vehicle shall prevail.

Multimedia

Overview of multimedia

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

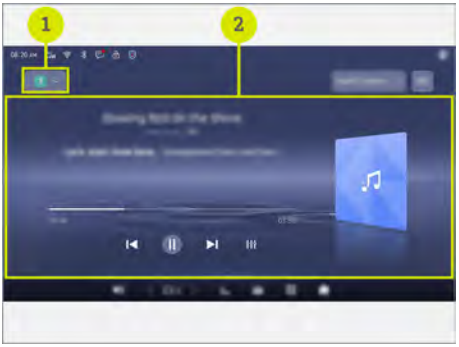
You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Film containing metallic substances could block radio signals. Do not apply film containing metallic substances to the windscreen, otherwise system operation could be affected.

Enter the multimedia interface:

- Tap to enter the multimedia interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Multimedia interface.



1 Audio source selection area:

- Local radio (FM/DAB)
- Bluetooth music
- USB music

2 Function operation area

After successful connection to Carplay/Android Auto, the audio source selection area will display music options of Carplay/Android Auto.

Local radio

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the multimedia interface:

- Tap to enter the multimedia interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Multimedia interface.

The user can perform the following operations in the local radio interface:

- Favourites: Tap to favourite/unfavourite the current radio station.
- Search: Tap to search for valid radio stations. Valid radio stations will be stored in the radio station list, and the first valid radio station will be played.
- Previous: Skip to the previous radio station.
- Play/Pause: Choose to start, stop, or continue the playback.
- Next: Skip to the next radio station.
- Radio list: View the radio station list.

- Sound effect setting: Enter the sound effect setting interface, then you can set the sound effects according to your personal preferences.
- Radio setting: Enter the radio setting interface, then you can set the radio stations according to your personal preferences.

  To search for radio stations for the first time, it is required to upload the current location information and site list, and the search process may be interrupted by any operation. If the station list is not updated, please use the previous list.

Bluetooth music

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the multimedia interface:

- Tap to enter the multimedia interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Multimedia interface.

The user can perform the following operations in the Bluetooth music interface:

- Play time: Swipe the playback progress bar left and right for adjustment.
- Previous: Skip to the previous track.
- Play/Pause: Choose to start, stop, or continue the playback.
- Next: Skip to the next track.
- Sound effect setting: Enter the sound effect setting interface, then you can set the sound effects according to your personal preferences.

  Bluetooth device connection is required.

USB music

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the multimedia interface:

- Tap to enter the multimedia interface.
- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap to enter the Multimedia interface.

After the user inserts a USB flash drive, the USB music interface will display the read partition name. Tap the partition to enter the audio file list interface, then you can perform the following operations:

If the USB flash drive has only one partition, the system will enter the audio file list interface by default.

- File list: Display the files in the list. You can swipe up and down to view more information.
- Play All: Play from the first track in the list.
- Sorting method: Set the sorting method of the files in the list.
- Sorting order: Set the files in the list to ascending or descending order.
- Mini player: Display the mini player when playing tracks. Tap the mini player to display the control bar. The following controls can be performed on the control bar:

- Play/Pause: Choose to start, stop, or continue the playback.
- Next: Skip to the next track.

- Full-screen player: When the mini player displays the control bar, tap again to enter the full-screen player interface. The following controls can be performed on the full-screen player:
  - Play mode button: Select Sequential play/Repeat play/Shuffle play.
  - Next: Skip to the next track.
  - Play/Pause: Choose to start, stop, or continue the playback.
  - Previous: Skip to the previous track.
  - Folder play: You can enter the folder and select tracks.
  - Sound effect setting: Enter the sound effect setting interface, then you can set the sound effects according to your personal preferences.
  - Playback speed: Set the playback speed.
  - Play time: Swipe the playback progress bar left and right for adjustment.

Voice Assistant

Voice control function

You can perform voice control through the voice assistant. You only need to say your command, and the system will help you complete the operation.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel, double tap the voice avatar on the centre display, or say the wake-up word (such as "Hello, smart") to wake up the voice assistant.

When using voice commands, please pay attention to the following:

- To give a command, please speak in a normal tone at a normal speed.
- Speak clearly and avoid slang.
- When using the voice assistant, keep the cabin quiet.
- To cancel the voice command conversation, press the button on the right side of the steering wheel again.

Download voice packs (if equipped)

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Intelligent Speech* > *Sound Studio*, tap **Use** on the voice pack, download and use the voice pack.

Voice assistance

Reference operations on voice assistant (→ Page 190)

Phone

Phone function

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

▶ Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

When using the phone function, connect a Bluetooth device first.

When there is an incoming call during driving, press the right button on the steering wheel to answer the call; or press the button to reject the call, then the main interface will display the information of the incoming call, and you can swipe up on the call interface to hide it in the notification bar.

Enter the Phone interface:

- Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for the planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap **Phone** to enter the Phone interface.

Using the Phone feature

You can perform the following in the Phone interface:

- **Recent calls:** Tap **Recent calls** to view the recently received/missed/rejected calls, or directly tap the number to dial.
- **My Favourites:** Tap **My Favourites** to quickly call an important contact, or search for/delete it.
- **Contacts:** Tap **Contacts** to search for contacts you want to call or delete.
- **Dial Pad:** Tap **Dial Pad** to enter numbers and add contacts.

Personal Centre

Personal centre function (if equipped)

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

Enter the Personal Centre interface:

- Tap on the status bar, and tap on the pop-up window to enter the Personal Centre interface.



Log in by scanning the QR code with smart APP.



1. **Switch Account:** Tap **Switch Account** to switch accounts.
2. **Log Out:** Tap **Log Out** to log out of the personal account.
3. **Digital key management (if equipped)**: Tap **Digital key management** to create and delete digital keys. This button is only displayed after the owner's account is logged in.
4. **Personal Preference:** The user can carry out the light setting, basic vehicle setting, display setting and system setting according to personal preference. After login to the account every time, the vehicle settings will be adjusted according to the account.
5. **Function area:** View or set vehicle information through “Account Setting” and “Privacy Security”.

Smartphone Integration

Android Auto

When the vehicle is equipped with Android Auto, you can use Android Auto to connect your phone to the vehicle and use various functions such as navigation, music, phone and message on your phone through the centre display of the vehicle.

Download Android Auto from Google Play Store. You can view the supported regions, compatible devices, APPs and more information of Android Auto on the support page of Android Auto.

If your Android phone uses Android 9 or older version, install Android Auto first.

If your Android phone uses Android 10 or later version, it comes with Android Auto and no installation is needed.

Wireless pairing

1. Use one of the following to connect the Android phone to the vehicle through Bluetooth.
   - Tap the Bluetooth icon on the upper right of the main interface of the centre display, then tap **Bluetooth Setting** to enter the connection interface, and tap **New Device**.
   - Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *General* > *Connection*, and tap **New Device**.
   - Enter the Bluetooth interface on the Android phone and tap "New Device". Select smart in the list. After the "New Device" interface on the centre display is activated automatically, operate the Android phone for connection.
   - Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel, then the centre display automatically switches to the device list. Select the corresponding Android phone to start connection.
2. Enter the PIN displayed on the centre display in the interface of the Android phone.
3. After the device is connected, confirm connection on the connection confirmation page pop up.

Wired pairing

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB port in the storage area below the centre display with a USB data transfer cable, then the Android phone will be connected automatically. After successful connection, the Android Auto icon will be displayed on the upper left corner of the centre display.
2. Tap the Android Auto icon in the App interface of the centre display to enter Android Auto.

For the best user experience, it is recommended to use the USB data cable provided by the device manufacturer. Aftermarket or third party cables may not work. To maintain the quality of connection, replace the data cable if there is a sign of significant wear.

Operating Android Auto

After the connection is established between the phone and the vehicle, Android Auto can be operated through the centre display, the phone, and the voice control button on the steering wheel.

The vehicle features the Google Assistant. When Android Auto is connected successfully, press and hold the voice control button or say the wake-up word of "OK Google, or Hey Google", and wait till the system gives a prompt tone, then you can operate the Apps on the phone by giving voice commands through the voice assistant.

When using Android Auto, to operate the built-in Apps of the centre display, tap the smart icon in the interface on the Android Auto, or swipe down from the top/swipe up from the bottom to access the vehicle control interface.

To disable Android Auto, tap the Android Auto icon of the corresponding device in the Bluetooth device list to disconnect the Android Auto.

When using navigation through the smart phone integration, the navigation information is only displayed on the centre display. The built-in navigation in the centre display will exit if it is currently on.

While 2 devices can be connected to the vehicle simultaneously, only 1 of them is allowed for smart phone integration.

Once Android Auto is connected, you cannot directly use the phone and multimedia functions on your device, and can only operate through Android Auto. To use the phone or multimedia functions, you need to disconnect the Android Auto first, and then tap the phone or multimedia icon to operate via Bluetooth.

Apple CarPlay

When the vehicle is equipped with Apple CarPlay, you can use Apple CarPlay to connect your phone to the vehicle and use various functions such as navigation, music, phone and message on your phone through the centre display of the vehicle.

NOTE

Apple CarPlay may collect and use the vehicle data, such as the speed and location.

smart is not responsible for any use of data by Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay is the service provided by Apple on the basis of its user terms and conditions. Therefore, smart is not responsible for any of the functions and applications of Apple CarPlay.

For information of Apps or iOS devices that CarPlay supports, please visit Apple's official website.

Wireless pairing

1. Use any of the following methods to connect an iPhone to the vehicle through Bluetooth.
   - Tap the Bluetooth icon on the upper right of the main interface of the centre display, then tap **Bluetooth Setting** to enter the connection interface, and tap **New Device**.
   - Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *General* > *Connection*, and tap **New Device**.
   - Enter the Bluetooth interface on the iPhone and choose “New Device”. After the “New Device” interface on the centre display is activated automatically, operate the iPhone for connection.
   - Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel, then the centre display automatically switches to the device list. Select the corresponding iPhone to start connection.
2. Enter the PIN displayed on the centre display in the interface of the iPhone.
3. After the device is connected, confirm connection on the connection confirmation page pop up.

Operating Apple CarPlay

After the connection is established between the phone and the vehicle, Apple CarPlay can be operated through the centre display, the phone, and the voice control button on the steering wheel.

The vehicle supports operating Apple CarPlay by voice control through Siri. After the Apple CarPlay is connected successfully, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel or say the wake-up words of “Hey Siri”, and wait till the system gives a prompt tone, then you can operate the Apps on the phone by giving voice commands through the voice assistant.

When using Apple CarPlay, to operate the built-in Apps of the centre display, tap the smart icon in the interface on the Apple CarPlay, or swipe down from the top/swipe up from the bottom to access the vehicle control interface.

To disable Apple CarPlay, tap the Apple CarPlay icon of the corresponding device in the Bluetooth device list to disconnect the Apple CarPlay.

When using navigation through the smart phone integration, the navigation information is only displayed on the centre display. The built-in navigation in the centre display will exit if it is currently on.

While 2 devices can be connected to the vehicle simultaneously, only 1 of them is allowed for smart phone integration.

Once Apple CarPlay is connected, you cannot directly use the phone and multimedia functions on your device, and can only operate through Apple CarPlay. To use the phone or multimedia functions, you need to disconnect the Apple CarPlay first, and then tap the phone or multimedia icon to operate via Bluetooth.

Wired screen mirroring

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the centre display

You may be distracted if you operate the integrated information and communication equipment while driving. You could lose control of the vehicle.

► Note the road and traffic conditions, stop the vehicle safely, and then operate the centre display.

If the vehicle is equipped with a wired screen mirroring function, you can connect a compatible device using a video capture card and a HDMI converter. The video playing on the device screen will then be mirrored to the central display or the passenger side display.

Setting the wired screen mirroring

1. Connect the USB port of the video capture card to the data transfer port located below the vehicle's centre console. Then, connect the HDMI end of the video capture card to the HDMI converter. Finally, connect the USB port of the HDMI converter to your device to complete the setup.
2. You can access the wired screen mirroring through any of the following methods:

- Centre display: Swipe left from the right edge of the centre display (only for Planet desktop) or tap to enter the Apps interface, and tap **Screen Mirroring** to enter the feature.
- Passenger side display: Tap in the bottom bar to enter the function.

- Once the connection is established, switching gears will cause the screen mirroring to exit automatically. To re-enable it, disconnect all connections and repeat the above steps.
- Wired screen mirroring can be enabled for any device equipped with a video signal output.

Overview and operation

Notes on operating the passenger side display

WARNING Risk of interference caused by the passenger side display

If watching or operating the passenger side display while driving, the driver may be distracted from traffic conditions. The driver may lose control of the vehicle.

- The driver may operate the passenger side display only when the vehicle is stationary.

Be sure to comply with local laws and regulations when you operate the passenger side display.

Depending on the model configuration and market, the actual equipment of your vehicle may be different from the descriptions and illustrations. Refer to the actual vehicle.

NOTE Rise of surface temperature of passenger side display under direct sunlight

If the display is exposed to direct sunlight, its surface will become very hot.

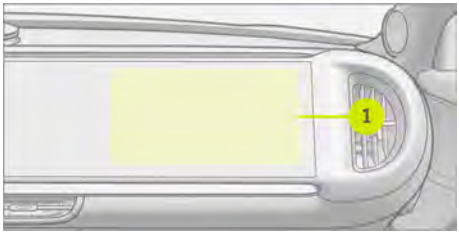
- If the passenger side display has been exposed to direct sunlight and its surface is dark, please pay attention to the temperature of the passenger side display before touching it.

If you wear polarized sunglasses, it may be difficult to read the information on the passenger side display.

Film containing metallic substances could block radio signals. Do not apply film containing metallic substances to the windscreen, otherwise system operation could be affected.

Overview of passenger side display

When operating the passenger side display, be sure to observe the laws and regulations of the country in which you are currently driving.



1 Passenger side display with touch function.

By operating the passenger side display, you can control the multimedia, seat, Climate Control and other settings.

Depending on the vehicle configuration and the market, your vehicle may not be equipped with a passenger side display. The configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.



1 **Status bar**: Display the date, Bluetooth, etc.

2 **Multimedia card**: Swipe left and right to switch cards. Tap the card to enter the corresponding APP interface.

3 **APP shortcut list**: Tap APP to open the corresponding APP, or swipe left and right to display more APPs in the shortcut list.

4 **Bluetooth headphone**: Tap , then the Bluetooth headphone connection window will pop up.

5 **Seat**: Tap to enter the seat interface.

6 **Climate bar**: Adjust the temperature in the front passenger zone.

7 **Apps**: Tap to enter the Apps interface.

8 **Main interface**: Tap to return to the main interface.

Quick Controls interface

Swipe down on the passenger side display to enter the Quick Controls interface.

You can swipe up on the Quick Controls interface depending on the number of functions. The functions in the Quick Controls interface can be enabled by tapping their icons. In this interface, a function can be enabled/disabled by tapping the relevant function button. When tapped, some functions (triggered) will pop up in new windows.

Swipe up on the passenger side display or tap on the blank interface of the passenger side display to go back to the previous interface.

Apps interface

Tap to access the Apps interface, where downloaded Apps (third-party Apps) and embedded Apps are visible, such as Multimedia.

Tap the App to open it in the subinterface as designed in the software architecture.

According to the number of Apps, swipe left from right in the Apps interface on the passenger side display. For some Apps, you can press and hold them, and then drag them or tap to delete them.

Tap to go back to the main interface again.

The content is for reference only. The specific function name and description should be subject to the real car.

Quick Controls Interface

Quick Controls interface

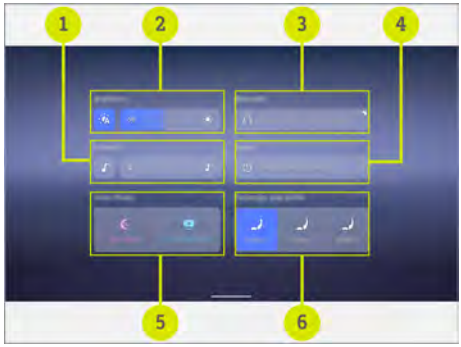
WARNING Risk of interference caused by the passenger side display

If watching or operating the passenger side display while driving, the driver may be distracted from traffic conditions. The driver may lose control of the vehicle.

► The driver may operate the passenger side display only when the vehicle is stationary.

Enter the Quick Controls interface:

- Swipe down on the passenger side display to enter the Quick Controls interface.



1 **Media volume adjustment area:** Drag the slider left and right to adjust the volume. Tap to turn on mute/unmute.

2 **Brightness adjustment area:** Drag the slider left and right to adjust the brightness of the centre display. Tap **Auto** to turn on the auto brightness mode, then the passenger side display will automatically adjust the brightness according to the light of the surrounding environment.

3 **Bluetooth headphone connection status**: Tap to bring up the Bluetooth headphone connection pop-up window.

4 **Screen off**: Tap to make the passenger side display enter the screen off status.

5 **Mode selection area**: Tap to enter the scenario mode details interface.

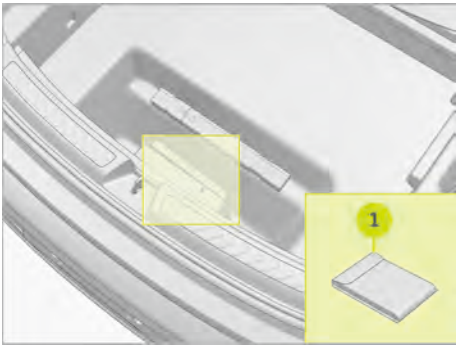
6 **Front passenger's personal preference**: Tap to bring up the location information of the front passenger's personal preference.

Emergency Equipment

Using a safety vest

The safety vest is placed in the boot.

1. Open the boot floor cover.



2. Take out the safety vest bag 1.
3. Open the bag 1 and take out the safety vest.

Use the safety vest according to the instructions on the label on the vest.

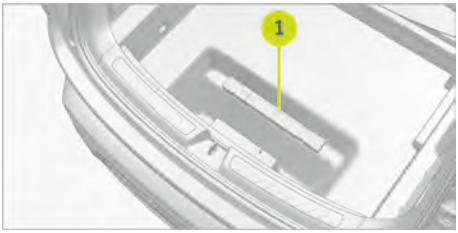
The safety vest must be replaced in the following cases:

- Reflective strips are damaged or dirty.
- The maximum number of washes is exceeded.
- The fluorescence has faded.

Warning triangle

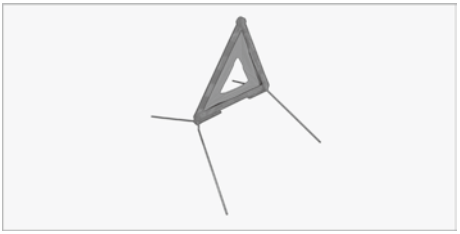
Taking out the warning triangle

1. Open the boot floor cover.



2. Take out the warning triangle 1.

Setting up the warning triangle



Unfold the warning triangle and place it in an appropriate position behind the vehicle.

Place the warning triangle 50–100 m behind the vehicle on a conventional road. Place it 150 m behind the vehicle on an expressway or more than 200 m in case of rain or fog.

Fixing point of fire extinguisher

The vehicle has a fixing point for the fire extinguisher. Please consult a smart Authorized Service Partner for details.

Fire extinguisher

If your vehicle is equipped with a fire extinguisher, it helps extinguish an incipient fire. Be sure to follow the operation manual provided by the fire extinguisher manufacturer.

NOTE

There are many factors that cause vehicle fire. Usually, the fire can be extinguished in time by fire extinguishers in the initial stage. However, if the fire is at the development stage or fierce stage, it can no longer be put out by fire extinguishers. In this case, it is necessary to evacuate in time and call the fire service.

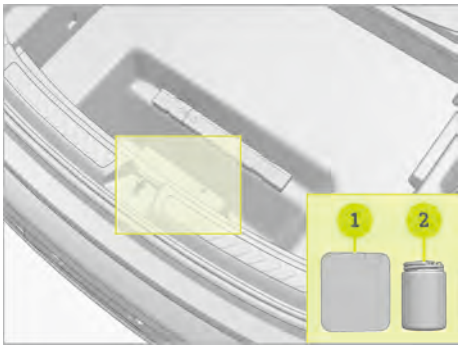
If you need to install a fire extinguisher fixing bracket and fire extinguisher, consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Flat Tyre

Storage location of tyre repair kit

The tyre repair kit is stored in the boot.

Open the boot floor cover.



1 Electric air pump
2 Tyre sealant bottle (if equipped)

Tyre repair kit

Instructions for use of tyre repair kit:

- When the outside temperature is not below –20°C and the puncture in the tyre is not larger than 6 mm, tyre sealant can be used.
- Do not remove any foreign objects piercing the tyre.
- Stick the speed limit label on the instrument panel within the driver's vision.

WARNING Risk of accident when using the tyre sealant

The tyre sealant cannot seal the tyre in the following situations:

- The cut or puncture in the tyre is larger than 6 millimeters.
- The rim is damaged.
- You have been driving under extremely low tyre pressure or with flat tyres.

► Do not continue driving.
► Consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.

WARNING Risk of accident and poisoning from tyre sealant

Tyre sealant, an irritant, is harmful to health in case of direct contact with body parts. Do not allow it to reach your skin, eyes or clothing. Never swallow it. Do not inhale any tyre sealant vapour. Keep tyre sealant out of the reach of children.

Observe the following if you come into contact with the tyre sealant:

► Change out of clothes that are stained with tyre sealant immediately.
► Rinse off the tyre sealant from your skin with water immediately.
► Rinse eyes thoroughly with plenty of clean water immediately if tyre sealant gets in eyes. Seek medical attention immediately.
► If tyre sealant is swallowed by mistake, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink plenty of water. Seek medical attention immediately.
► In case of allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.

NOTE

The electric air pump overheats after extensive operation.

► Do not keep the pump running continuously for more than 10 minutes.

Tires on your vehicle are equipped with sound-absorbing cotton. When a tire is repaired with puncture sealant, the sound-absorbing cotton must be replaced, and the tire replacement is recommended to be done by a smart Authorized Service Partner.

For the use method and expiration date, please refer to the instructions on the tyre repair kit. Please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner if any problem occurs during operation.

Jump-Starting the Vehicle

Notes on jump start

For jump start, pay attention to the following:

- Never touch the high voltage components in the front compartment.
- Use a battery with rated voltage of 12 V for jump start of the vehicle with low battery.
- Never smoke or use open flame near the 12 V battery.
- When connecting the jumper cable, avoid short circuits of other components in the front compartment.
- The 12 V battery will produce flammable and explosive gases. Improper use of jumper cables may cause sparks and even explosions.
- The 12 V battery contains sulfuric acid. If it splashes on eyes, skin or clothes, wash them with plenty of fresh water. If it splashes on eyes, seek medical attention immediately.
- Wash your hands after working on the 12 V battery. The 12 V battery and related accessories contain toxic substances, like lead.

NOTE Risk of vehicle damage from incorrect jumper cable operation

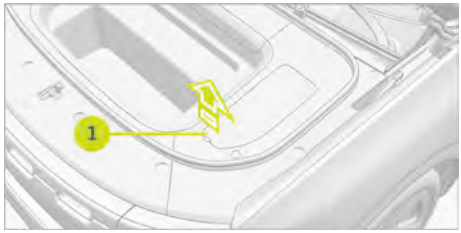
► If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, an electrical short circuit may occur and damage the vehicle. The resulting repairs are not covered by the warranty. The jumper cables must be connected or removed in the correct order, and make sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metals.

If the vehicle cannot be started due to the undervoltage 12 V battery, jump start can be operated to start the vehicle.

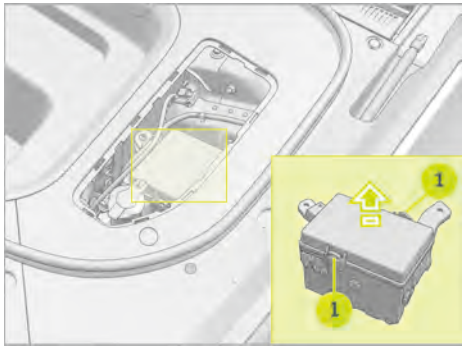
Jump start

Connecting the jump start cables

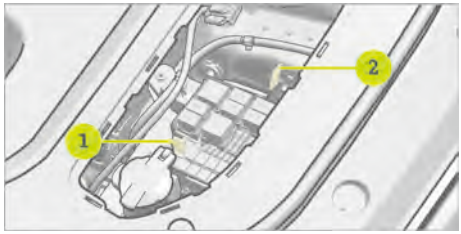
1. Open the bonnet.

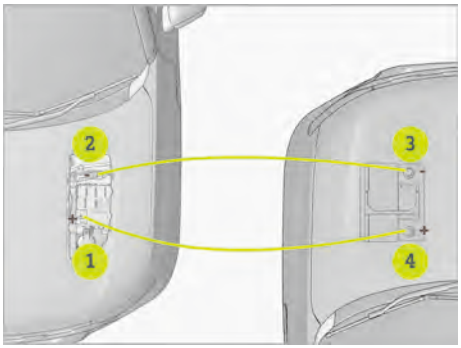


2. Remove the cover 1 upward directly in the arrowed direction.



3. Press the clips 1 on both sides and remove the fuse box cover upward.





4. Connect the red jumper cable to the 12 V battery's positive terminal 4 of the rescue vehicle.
5. Connect the other end of the red jumper cable to the fuse box terminal 1 of the vehicle with low battery.
6. Connect the black jumper cable to the 12 V battery's negative terminal 3 of the rescue vehicle.
7. Connect the other end of the black jumper cable to the body ground terminal 2 of the vehicle with low battery.
8. Start the rescue vehicle first and then the vehicle with low battery.

Removing the jump start cables

1. Remove the black jumper cable 2 from the body ground terminal of the vehicle with low battery, and then remove the black jumper cable 3 from the negative terminal of the rescue vehicle.
2. Remove the red jumper cable 1 from the fuse box terminal of the vehicle with low battery, and then remove the red jumper cable 4 from the positive terminal of the rescue vehicle.

Vehicle Transport

Vehicle transportation methods

For vehicle transportation, the Rescue mode must be activated.

WARNING Risk of accident due to transporting vehicle incorrectly

Avoid the following when transporting the vehicle:

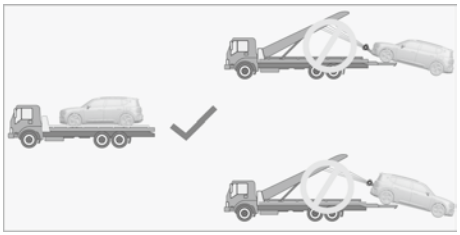
- During transport of the vehicle, all wheels are not tied or secured.
- Fastening device contacting the vehicle electrical wiring or fluid lines when tying down the wheels.
- Moving the vehicle when the fastening device is not released.

► Fasten, transport and move the vehicle in the correct way.

smart is not responsible for the vehicle damage caused by incorrect operation during transportation.

NOTE

Never transport the vehicle in the way not specified by smart. Observe the following instructions, damage caused by inappropriate vehicle transportation is not covered by smart warranty.



When the wheels rotate, the front and rear drive motors of the vehicle can generate electric energy. It is recommended that the vehicle be transported with a flatbed trailer or similar transport vehicles. As shown in the figure above, all wheels must be tied and secured during transport. Do not make any wheels touch the ground. Otherwise, serious damage and overheating will occur.

Flatbed trailers are the approved method for vehicle transportation.

smart is not responsible and will not reimburse the cost of any service not dispatched through smart Roadside Assistance.

Move the vehicle onto the flatbed trailer by using a winch, or move the vehicle out of the parking space to align it with the flatbed trailer. Only after Rescue mode is enabled are the tyres allowed to rotate slowly. It is recommended to tow the vehicle 100 meters over 10 minutes.

If the Rescue mode cannot be activated or the centre display cannot be activated, the vehicle can be loaded to the approved transport position using tow brackets/small wheels/assist wheels. Be sure to check the specifications provided by the manufacturer and the recommended load capacity before using tow brackets/small wheels/assist wheels.

Rescue mode

Activating the Rescue mode

1. Ensure the key is in the vehicle.
2. Enter the Settings interface:

Tap > *Vehicle Condition* > *Rescue Mode*, press the brake pedal and tap the **Activate** button in the secondary interface, then the vehicle will automatically shift into N gear, the Electronic Parking Brake will be released, and the "Rescue mode is activated successfully" prompt will pop up on the centre display.

NOTE

In Rescue mode, the EPB will not be automatically activated. Be aware of the risk of vehicle rolling away.

If the Rescue mode cannot be activated or the centre display cannot be activated, the vehicle can be loaded to the approved transport position using tow brackets/small wheels/assist wheels. Be sure to check the specifications provided by the manufacturer and the recommended load capacity before using tow brackets/small wheels/assist wheels.

Exiting the Rescue mode

Rescue mode will be deactivated when any of the following conditions is met:

- Tap the **Exit** button in the tertiary interface in the Rescue mode.
- Shift into D or R gear.
- Shift into P gear, and lock the vehicle from outside.
- Enter the Settings interface:
  Tap *Vehicle Settings* > *Vehicle Control* > *Vehicle Power off*, and then a power-off reminder window pops out. Tap **Confirm** to power off the vehicle power.
- Enter the Quick Controls interface:
  Swipe down on the centre display, and tap , then a power-off prompt window will be displayed. Tap **Confirm** to power off the vehicle.

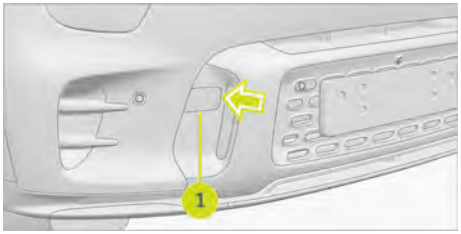
Tow hook

Installing the front tow hook

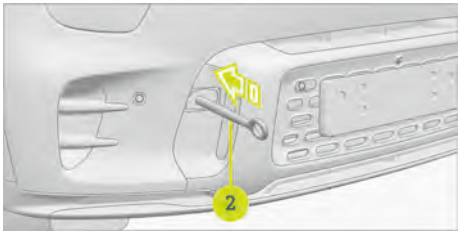
1. Open the boot floor cover.



2. Take out the tow hook from the tool kit in the boot.



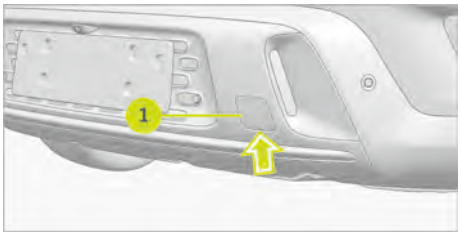
3. Use a suitable tool wrapped with a soft cloth to pry out the front tow hook cover 1 in the arrowed position.



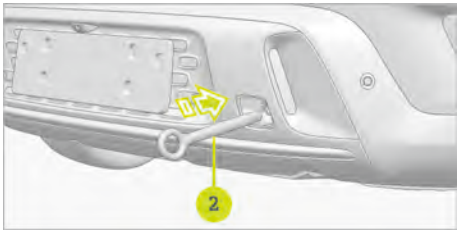
4. Screw the tow hook 2 in and tighten it.
5. After use, restore the tow hook and front tow hook cover to their original positions.

Installing the rear tow hook

1. Open the boot floor cover.
2. Take out the tow hook from the tool kit in the boot.



3. Use a suitable tool wrapped with a soft cloth to pry out the rear tow hook cover 1 in the arrowed position.



4. Screw the tow hook 2 in and tighten it.
5. After use, restore the tow hook and rear tow hook cover to their original positions.

NOTE

When towing the vehicle, pay attention to the vehicle location and ground clearance. Steep trailer ramp or insufficient ground clearance may cause vehicle damage when towing with the tow bar.

Notes on Wheels and Tyres

Notes on noise or abnormal manoeuvrability

When driving, be aware of abnormalities in vibration, noise, and maneuverability, such as pulling to either side, which may indicate damaged wheels or tyres. If you suspect a tyre failure, please slow down immediately, come to a safe stop as soon as possible, and inspect the wheels and tyres for damage. Hidden tyre damage could also lead to abnormalities in maneuverability. If you don't find any signs of damage, please drive to a smart Authorized Service Partner for wheel and tyre inspection.

Notes on regularly inspecting the wheels and tyres

WARNING Risk of accident due to damaged tyres

Damaged tyres can cause tyre pressure loss.

As a result, you could lose control of your vehicle.

► Check the tyres regularly for signs of damage and replace any damaged tyres immediately.

Inspect the tyre condition regularly. It is recommended that the tyres be inspected every month or before each special situation, such as a long trip, a load change or driving off road.

- Check the tyre pressure.
- Visually check the wheels and tyres for damage.
- Check the valve caps.
- Visually check the tread depth across the entire tread and the contact surface of the tyre.
  Sufficient tread depth is vital for tyre performance. Tyres with tread depth under 3 mm are prone to slip on wet roads and not suitable for use. Tyres with tread depth under 4 mm have reduced performance in mud and snow and are not suitable for driving in winter.
  When the tread depth is below 1.6 mm, wear indicators will appear on the tread and the tyre shall be replaced.

Notes on snow chains

Snow chains shall only be used on snowy or icy roads or as required in local laws and regulations, and the vehicle speed shall not exceed 40 km/h (25 mph) or the limit specified by the chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.

When entering a snow-free or ice-free road section, the snow chains shall be removed immediately.

WARNING Possible risks caused by snow chains

Observe particularly the following requirements when using snow chains:

- ▶ Before installing snow chains, please remove the wheel trim covers (if equipped).
- ▶ Do not deflate the tyres when installing snow chains. Reinflating the tyres could make the snow chains over-tightened, causing tyre damage.
- ▶ Snow chains can only be installed on the rear wheels.
- ▶ During driving with snow chains, avoid sharp turns and emergency braking.
- ▶ For vehicles equipped with driver assistance systems, do not use driver assistance systems when snow chains have been installed.
- ▶ When using snow chains, please abide by local laws and regulations.
- ▶ Follow the installation instructions specified by the manufacturer of snow chains.
- ▶ Use quality snow chains that meet the designed requirements of tyre and rim dimensions of your vehicle.
- ▶ For uncertainties in the use of snow chains, consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.
- ▶ This vehicle is not equipped with snow chains. Please purchase snow chains by yourself. Damage to the vehicle or accidents due to incorrect use of snow chains is not covered by warranty.

Applicable snow chain models

Tyre size	Snow chain model
245/50 R19	XG Cross 249
255/45 R20	XG Cross 251
255/40 R21	XG Cross 251

Tyre Pressure

Notes on tyre pressure

WARNING Risk of accident due to insufficient or excessive tyre pressure

Insufficient or excessive tyre pressure poses the following risks:

- The tyres may burst and their service lives are shortened as a result, especially as the payload and vehicle speed increase.
- Driving comfort can be compromised.
- Damage may occur when driving on rugged road.
- The tyre traction can be impaired.
- The tyres may wear excessively and/or unevenly.
- The handling and braking performance can be adversely affected.
- Tyres can overheat and deform.
- Vehicle's operational range can be reduced.

▶ Maintain the tyre pressure at a normal level.

WARNING Risk of accident due to repeated tyre pressure drop

If the tyre pressure drops repeatedly, the wheel, valve or tyre may be damaged.

This may also cause the tyres to burst.

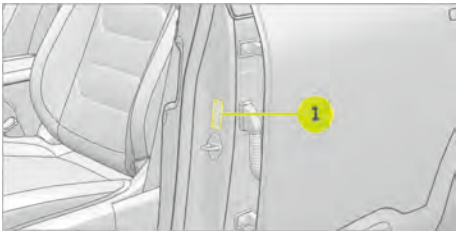
- ▶ Inspect the tyre for signs of foreign objects.
- ▶ Check whether the wheel or valve has a leak.
- ▶ If you are unable to rectify the fault, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

WARNING Risk of accident due to driving with flat tyres

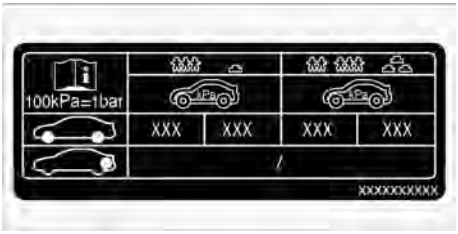
Flat tyres have a significant impact on driving, steering and braking performance.

- ► Never drive with flat tyres.
- ► Use a tyre sealant or contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Tyre pressure table



The tyre pressure table is located on the left B pillar 1.



The tyre pressure table shows the recommended tyre pressures approved for all tyres. The recommended tyre pressures are suitable for cold tyres under various driving conditions such as load and/or speed.

Observe the notes on tyre pressure (→ Page 212).

The labels on your vehicle may differ from the description and illustration herein, depending on the model and market.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

WARNING Importance of tyre pressure abnormal indicator light

- ► The tyre pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance. It is always your responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressure meets the value specified by the manufacturer.
- ► Driving with low tyre pressure may cause tyre damage and affect the vehicle performance and tread life, and may affect the steering and braking capabilities of the vehicle. If the tyre is seriously damaged, it may also lead to traffic accidents and even serious casualties.

Your vehicle is equipped with an active tyre pressure monitoring system that monitors tyre pressure through sensors fitted on the air valve of each tyre.

Enter the Settings interface:

- Tap > *Vehicle Condition* > *My Car* to view the current tyre pressure.

Tyre temperature high, tyre leakage and sensor battery low alarms

When any of the tyre temperature high, tyre leakage and sensor battery low alarms is activated, the corresponding tyre icon will flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, and a reminder message will pop up on the driver information display.

Tyre pressure low alarm

The standard tyre pressure of the vehicle is 250 kPa. For vehicles equipped with 21-inch tyres, the standard tyre pressure is 270 kPa. If the tyre pressure drops 50 kPa below the standard value, the tyre pressure low alarm will be activated and the corresponding tyre indicator lamp will flash. The tyre pressure monitoring system status indicator lamp will remain on, accompanied by an audible alarm until the alarm is eliminated, and a prompt message will appear on the driver information display. In the cold tyre inflation process, the tyre pressure low alarm will not disappear

immediately. Please inflate the tyre to the standard tyre pressure, and then drive at a speed of more than 30 km/h (20 mph) for a few minutes, then the tyre pressure low alarm will be cleared. For the normal use of your vehicle's tyres, please pay attention to the tyre pressure and inflate the tyres as needed.

A number of factors can cause the tyre pressure monitoring system to work abnormally:

- Incompatible tyres are installed or wheels are modified.
- There is fluid in the tyre or tyre sealant is injected inside.
- Driving with snow chains installed.
- Driving near TV stations, gas stations, airports and other facilities that generate strong radio waves or electrical noise.
- Accessories that may interfere with the vehicle's radio receiver or electrical system are installed.

NOTE

- ► Check the tyre pressure regularly and make sure it is within the specified range.
- ► The tyre pressure monitoring system cannot indicate in advance rapid wear of tyres caused by external factors (such as, tyre burst) nor identify long-term natural uniform pressure losses on all tyres.
- ► If the driver information display shows abnormal tyre pressure during driving, park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a smart Authorized Service Partner as soon as possible.

Checking and correcting the tyre pressure manually

For the recommended tyre pressure of genuine tyres installed on the vehicle, please refer to the tyre pressure table on the driver's side B pillar.

Always adjust tyre pressure when the tyre is cold. Cold tyre conditions are as follows:

- The vehicle runs less than 1.6 km.
- The vehicle is parked away from direct sunlight for at least 3 hours.
- Check the tyre pressure with a suitable tyre pressure gauge.
- If necessary, adjust the tyre pressure.

For the vehicle equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system, you can also check the tyre pressure on the centre display.

Replacing Wheels and Tyres

Notes on replacing the wheels and tyres

For information on permitted wheel/tyre combinations, please consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.

WARNING Risk of accident due to using wheels and tyres of incorrect size

If wheels and tyres of the wrong size are used, the brake or suspension components may become damaged.

- ► Please replace wheels and tyres with those that fulfill the specifications of the original parts.

When replacing tyres, make sure the following information is correct:

- ► Name
- ► Vehicle manufacturer
- ► Type

WARNING Risk of injury due to exceeding the specified tyre load-bearing capacity or the permissible speed rating

Exceeding the specified tyre load-bearing capacity or the permissible speed rating may lead to tyre damage and bursting.

- ► Use tyres of types and sizes approved by smart for your vehicle. Consult a smart Authorized Service Partner for any question.
- ► Observe the tyre load-bearing capacity rating and maximum speed permitted for your vehicle.

NOTE Vehicle or tyre damage from using tyres of an unapproved type and size

Using tyres of an unapproved type and size may adversely affect the handling performance and energy consumption. In addition, other tyre sizes may cause the tyres to come into contact with the body and axle components when under load. This may damage the vehicle or the tyres.

- ► For safety reasons, please use tyres, wheels and accessories approved by smart for your vehicle.

WARNING Risk of accident due to driving with retread tyres

smart neither tests nor recommends the use of retread tyres as some existing damage to retread tyres is difficult to detect. Therefore, driving safety cannot be guaranteed.

- ► Never use retread tyres.

WARNING Risk of accidents due to wheels and tyres being damaged from driving over obstacles

Compared with tyres of other sizes, the low aspect ratio tyres and large size tyres installed on this model have a larger diameter, wider tread, and smaller aspect ratio (sidewall height). These size changes not only make the vehicle look more luxurious and dynamic, but also greatly improve the maneuverability. However, due to the low sidewall height of low aspect ratio tyres and large size tyres, during collision with raised or sunken obstacles, the tyre cord may be broken due to tyre deformation under severe compression between the obstacle and the rim flange, resulting in safety hazards such as bulging or cracking sidewall of the tyre. At the same time, there may also be safety hazards such as deformed or cracking wheel rim under impact. Strictly pay attention to the following when driving the vehicle:

- ► Choose a road with good conditions.
- ► Choose a correct and standardized parking space for parking. It is strictly forbidden to hit the kerbs or steps.
- ► Concentrate during driving and avoid any raised or sunken obstacle in front in time. If you cannot avoid it, be sure to reduce the vehicle speed and pass slowly.
- ► Regularly check the tyres and wheels for abnormalities, including the treads and inner and outer sidewalls. Ensure that the tyre pressure is within the specified range for a long time. In case of tire bulge, crack, or rim deformation, please get the tire replaced at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

NOTE Damage to tyre pressure sensors from inappropriate use of tyre fitting tools

Vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system: tyre pressure sensors are installed inside the wheels. Never use a tyre fitting tool in the area of the valve. Otherwise, damage to the tyre pressure sensor may occur.

► Choose a smart Authorized Service Partner for tyre replacement.

WARNING Risk of accident due to summer tyres being damaged by low ambient temperature

When the ambient temperature is low, driving with summer tyres may cause permanent tyre damage, such as cracks, which may cause accidents to occur.

► smart recommends the use of 4-season tyres or winter tyres for driving in low temperature or on snowy and icy roads.

Tyres that are not approved for the vehicle by smart or are not used correctly can impair the operating safety.

Note the following when replacing tyres:

- To replace a tire, first remove the wheel trim cover (if equipped). For detailed instructions, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.
- Only use tyres of the same brand, size, load-bearing capacity, speed rating, structure and tread pattern. The load-bearing capacity of the replacement tyres shall not be lower than the original ones.
- Observe the requirements of wheel dynamic balance.
- Never make any modifications to the brake system, wheels or tyres.
- **Vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system:** all installed wheels must come with functioning tyre pressure sensors.
- Please break in new tyres at speeds below 80 km/h (50 mph) for the first 100 km (60 miles).
- Ultraviolet rays, extreme temperatures, high load and environmental conditions can cause tyres to age over time. It is recommended that tyres be replaced every six years. Early replacement shall be conducted when necessary, even if the tread depth is above the minimum level.
- The wheel bolts must be tightened to 180 N m. Please check the torque with a torque wrench.

For further information on wheels and tyres, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

At the same time, please observe the following information on other relevant subjects:

- Notes on tyre pressure.
- Tyre pressure table.
- Requirements for wheel dynamic balance.

Notes on rotating the wheels

WARNING Risk of injury due to rotating wheels

Note the following when rotating wheels:

► Wheel bolts must be torqued to the correct specification, or accident may occur.

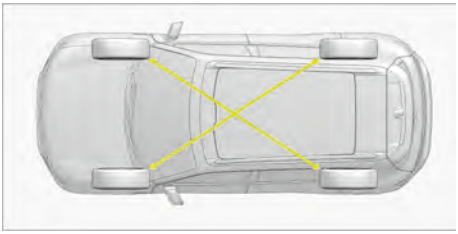
► After rotating wheels, check and adjust tyre pressure. Incorrect tyre pressure may adversely affect the tyre lifespan and vehicle handling, which could lead to loss of control.

The wear patterns on the front and rear tyres differ:

- Front tyres wear more at the shoulders of the tread
- Rear tyres wear more at the centre of the tread

Rotate wheels every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) to 8,000 km (5,000 miles) depending on the tread wear. During wheel rotation, ensure

that the OUTSIDE indicator on the tyre faces the outer side.



The recommended method of wheel rotation is shown in the figure.

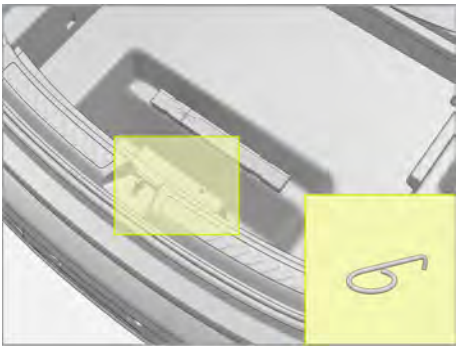
Notes on storing the wheels

When storing wheels, please observe the following:

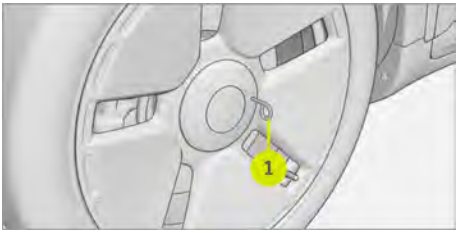
- Store the removed wheels in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease or fuel.

Removing the wheel trim cover (if equipped)

1. Open the boot floor cover.



2. Take out the removal hook from the tool kit in the boot.



3. Insert the removal hook 1 into the wheel trim cover hole and pull it outward to remove the wheel trim cover.

Depending on the model configuration and market, the actual equipment of your vehicle may be different from the illustrations. The actual vehicle shall prevail.

Tyre markings

The tyre markings placed on a tyre sidewall are standardized information used to identify and describe the fundamental characteristics of the tyre.

That information includes the load index, velocity symbol, etc., for example, 255 / 45 R20 105 V.

- 255: nominal section width (mm)
- 45: nominal aspect ratio
- R: meridian structure code
- 20: nominal rim diameter (in)
- 105: load index
- V: velocity symbol

Tread wear indicator

Tyre wear indicators are located in the tread grooves of tyres. When the tread of a tyre is at the same height as the wear indicators, please replace the tyre with a new one as soon as possible.

Tyres shall be inspected regularly. If you don't know about the tyre wear indicators inside the tread grooves, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

WARNING Risk of accident from using tyres of grade lower than the original

▶ If a tyre with a load index or speed rating lower than the original one is used, it may overheat and be damaged, thus causing accidents and personal injury.

Seasonal Tyres

All-season tyres

All-season tyres are designed to provide adequate traction in all seasons, but may not provide the same traction as winter tyres in icy and snowy conditions.

When installing all-season tyres, please observe the following requirements:

- Use tyres of the same make, size, load index, speed class, structure and tread pattern for all wheels.
- Use only radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres.

Summer tyres

Your vehicle's original high-performance summer tyres are not suitable for winter road conditions. When driving in low temperature or icy road conditions, winter tyres or all-season tyres are recommended. If winter or all-season tyres are not installed, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for advice.

WARNING Accident risk due to improper use of summer tyres

The summer tyres provide insufficient traction in low temperatures or snow and ice road conditions. It is important to select and fit the right tyres for winter to make sure vehicle safety and optimum performance, even if the vehicle is equipped with dual motors.

Winter tyres

Winter tyres improve traction in icy conditions.

When installing winter tyres, observe the following requirements:

- Use tyres of the same make, size, load index, speed class, structure and tread pattern for all wheels.
- Use only radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres.

If winter tyres with a lower speed rating are used, do not exceed the tyre's rated maximum speed.

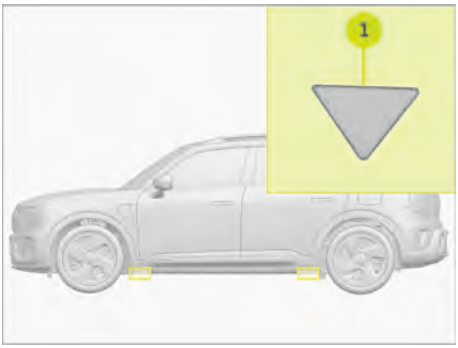


The mountain/snowflake symbol is visible on the sidewall of winter tyres.

Driving with winter tyres may experience increased road noise, reduced tread life and reduced traction on dry roads.

Lifting the Vehicle

Vehicle lifting points



Lifting point sign 1 under door sill outer trim panel.



1 Vehicle lifting points
2 High voltage battery

Notes on lifting the vehicle:

- Never place the lifting arm in the high voltage battery area 2. The lifting arm shall be placed at the designated lifting points 1 of the underbody. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged. **Damage due to improper lifting is not covered under the Warranty.**
- Do not lift the vehicle when the charging cable is connected, even if it is not charging at the moment.
- Never work on the vehicle if it is not properly supported. Otherwise, serious damage, personnel injury or death may occur.

Front Compartment

Opening and closing the bonnet

WARNING Risk of accident due to driving with unlocked bonnet

Unlocked bonnet may open and block the vision when driving.

► Never unlock the bonnet during driving.
► Make sure that the bonnet is locked before each trip.

WARNING Risk of accident and injury when opening and closing the bonnet

During closing of the bonnet, if there are people or objects within the movement range of the bonnet, there may be a risk of people being pinched or the bonnet being damaged.

► The bonnet can only be closed when there are no people or objects within the movement range of the bonnet.

WARNING Risk of scald when opening the bonnet

If you open the bonnet when the drive system is overheating or fire breaks out in the front compartment, you may come into contact with hot air or spilled liquid.

► Allow the overheated components to cool down before opening the bonnet.
► In case of fire in the front compartment, close the bonnet and call the fire department.

WARNING Risk of injury by moving components

Even if the vehicle is powered off, some components, such as the cooling fan, in the front compartment may keep running or turn on again all of a sudden.

Guarantee the following items before operating in the front compartment:

- ► The vehicle is powered off.
- ► Never touch the hazardous area around moving components, for example, the cooling fan.
- ► Take off jewelry and watch.
- ► Keep hair, clothes, and decorations far away from moving components.

WARNING Risk of injury due to using the front wiper when the bonnet is opened

You may be trapped by the wiper when the bonnet is opened and the front wiper starts moving.

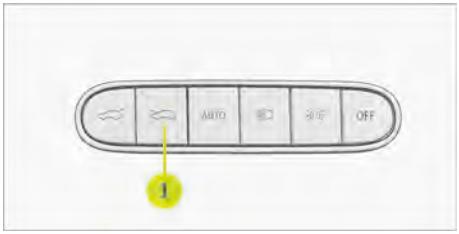
- ► Make sure to turn off the wiper and the vehicle before opening the bonnet.

NOTE Risk of damage to front luggage compartment

The load capacity of the front luggage compartment is 50 kg (or 20 kg for 4WD models). If the load exceeds the load capacity, the front luggage compartment may be damaged.

- ► The load in the front luggage compartment shall be firmly secured, and not exceed the load capacity of the front luggage compartment.

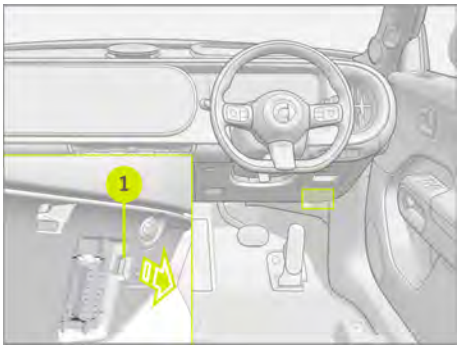
Opening:



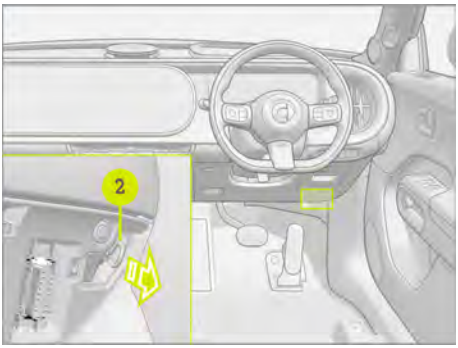
1. You can unlock the bonnet by the following methods:
   - Press and hold the button on the keyfob.
   - Press and hold the button 1 on the combination switch of the driver side instrument panel.
   - Enter the Settings interface: Tap > *Quick Controls* > .
   - Enter the Quick Controls interface: Swipe down on the centre display, enter the Quick Controls interface and tap the **Open Bonnet** button.
   - After connecting smart APP to the vehicle through Bluetooth, press the bonnet control button.
2. After the bonnet is unlocked, lift it upward.

Opening by the mechanical method:

If the bonnet cannot be opened by the methods described above, please try to open it by the mechanical method:



1. Press the latch 1 and remove the pull rope cover in the arrowed direction.



2. Pull the bonnet release cable 2 twice consecutively.
3. Lift up the bonnet.

Closing:

1. Pull down the edge of the bonnet. When the bonnet is about to close, gently push it until it closes.



2. If the hood is not completely closed, press the hood area 1 with appropriate force to completely close the hood.

After the bonnet is closed, check that it is completely locked.

Checking the coolant level

WARNING Risk of accident caused by overheated drive system

If you open the bonnet when the drive system is overheating or fire breaks out in the front compartment, you may come into contact with hot air or spilled liquid.

- ► Allow the overheated drive system to cool down before opening the bonnet.
- ► In case of fire in the front compartment, close the bonnet and call the fire department.

WARNING Risk of burn caused by high temperature coolant

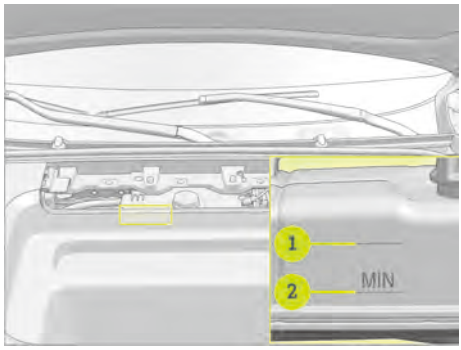
The cooling system is pressurized when the drive system is under normal operating temperature. You may be scalded by hot coolant when opening the cap.

- ► Allow the drive system to cool down before opening the cap.
- ► Wear protective gloves and goggles when opening the cap.
- ► Open the cap slowly to release pressure.

1. Park on a level ground.
2. Open the bonnet.



3. Remove the cover 1 in the arrowed direction.



4. If the coolant level is below 2, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for inspection or top-up.

Do not add coolant over the marked position 1.

If the liquid level exceeds the mark 1 during maintenance, the excess coolant needs to be pumped out.

Topping up the windscreen washer system

WARNING Risk of scald caused by hot components in the front compartment

Some components in the front compartment, such as the drive system and radiator, may be very hot.

- ► Operate after the front compartment cools down.

WARNING Risk of accident caused by overheated drive system

If you open the bonnet when the drive system is overheating or fire breaks out in the front compartment, you may come into contact with hot air or spilled liquid.

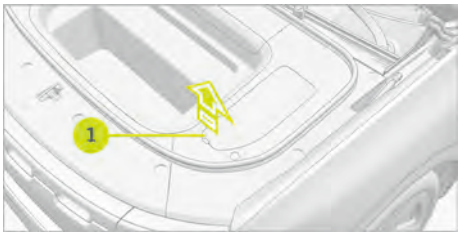
- ► Allow the overheated drive system to cool down before opening the bonnet.
- ► In case of fire in the front compartment, close the bonnet and call the fire department.

WARNING Risk of fire and injury from windscreen washer concentrate

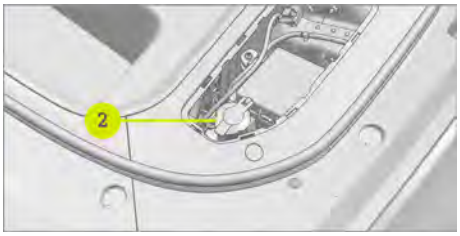
Windscreen washer concentrate is highly flammable.

- ► Do not ignite, use naked flame, smoke or cause spark when cleaning with windscreen washer concentrate.

1. Open the bonnet.



2. Remove the cover 1 upward directly in the arrowed direction.



3. Open the windscreen washer filler cap 2 to add windscreen washer fluid.

Restore the windscreen washer filler cap and the bonnet to their original positions after filling.

For easy operation, it is recommended that you stand on the side of the vehicle when opening the windscreen washer filler cap.

Cleaning and Care

Notes on washing the vehicle

WARNING Risk of accident caused by reduced braking effect after cleaning the vehicle

The braking effect is reduced after cleaning the vehicle.

- ► After cleaning the vehicle, watch out for traffic conditions and brake carefully until the braking effect is fully restored.

NOTE Damage caused by improper use of car wash

- ► Before entering the car wash, make sure the washer is in the right size for the vehicle.
- ► Maintain a sufficient ground clearance between the bottom of the vehicle and the guide rails of car wash.
- ► Maintain an adequate gap width to the car wash, especially the width of guide rails.

Before washing your vehicle, first ensure the following to prevent damage to your vehicle:

- Ensure that all doors, the bonnet, the liftgate, charging port covers and all windows are fully closed.
- The blower for ventilation has been turned off.
- The windscreen wiper switches are in off position 0.
- The Autohold function has been disabled. For specific operation steps, please refer to (→ Page 118).
- In car wash facilities equipped with conveyor systems:
  - Shifting to N gear N.
  - Before entering the washing area, turn off the Autohold function to prevent the vehicle from automatically shifting to park P when conditions for triggering the Autohold are met (for example, if the driver unfastens the seatbelt, opens the driver's door, or the Autohold time is exceeded).

When using a car wash facility equipped with a conveyor system, please keep your seatbelt fastened and remain inside the vehicle.

Notes on using high pressure car washer

WARNING Risk of an accident when using a high pressure car washer with circular jet nozzles

The water jet of a circular jet nozzle (dirt grinder) can cause externally invisible damage to the tyres or chassis parts

Components damaged in this way may unexpectedly fail.

- ► Never use a high pressure car washer with circular jet nozzles to clean the vehicle.
- ► Have damaged tyres or chassis parts replaced immediately.
- ► Never use a high pressure car washer to flush the air intake grille.

When using a high pressure car washer, to protect your vehicle, please ensure the following:

- Maintain the high pressure nozzle at least 30 cm away from the vehicle.
- **Vehicle with decorative film:** Vehicle parts may be covered with decorative film. Maintain at least 70 cm between the vehicle parts covered with decorative film and the nozzle of the high pressure car washer. Keep moving the nozzle of the high pressure car washer during washing. The water temperature of the high pressure car washer shall not be higher than 40°C.
- Observe the correct distance stated in the Operation Manual of the equipment provided by the manufacturer.
- Never direct the nozzle of the high pressure car washer towards weak areas, such as tyres, crevices, electrical components, batteries, lamps, and vents.

Washing the vehicle manually

Observe regulatory requirements, for example, in many countries, manual washing is only allowed at specially designated wash racks.

1. Use a mild cleaning agent such as car shampoo.
2. Wash the vehicle with lukewarm water and a soft car sponge. Never expose the vehicle to direct sunlight during this operation.
3. Carefully rinse the vehicle with water and wipe the vehicle dry with chamois leather.

Notes on paintwork/matte finish paintwork care

Observe the following notes:

Parts	Cleaning and care	Avoid paintwork damage
Paintwork	• Insect remains: Soak with insect remover and rinse off the treated areas. • Bird droppings: Soak with water and rinse off. • Tree resin, oils, fuels and greases: Remove by gently rubbing with a cloth soaked in cleaning paraffin ether or lighter oil. • Coolant and brake fluid: Remove with a damp cloth and clean water. • Tar stains: Use tar remover. • Wax: Use silicone remover.	• Never attach stickers, films or similar articles. • Remove dirt immediately if possible.
Matte finish		• Do not polish the vehicle and wheels. • Only use a car washer that complies with the latest engineering standards. • Never use paint cleaners, buffing or polishing products, or gloss preservers such as wax. • Drive to a smart Authorized Service Partner for paint repair.

Notes on cleaning the decorative film

Please follow the notes on paintwork/ matte finish paintwork care (→ Page 224) in the section “Notes on paintwork/matte finish paintwork care”, which also apply to decorative film.

Observe the following notes:

Cleaning	Never damage the decorative film.
• For cleaning, use plenty of water and a neutral cleaner without additives or abrasives. • Remove dirt as soon as possible and avoid rubbing it too hard. Otherwise, it may cause irreparable damage to the decorative film. • Dirt on paintwork or decorative film tarnished: Use a paint cleaner suitable for the vehicle. • Insect remains: Soak with insect remover and rinse off the treated areas. • Bird droppings: Soak with water and rinse off. • To prevent water stains, wipe the vehicle with decorative film after each cleaning by using a soft absorbent cloth.	• The service life and colour of decorative film are affected by: - Sunshine - Temperature, such as hot air blower - Weather condition - Stoning and smudging - Chemical cleaner - Oil-based articles • Never use car wax for matte, glossy or structured decorative film. It may cause permanent stains.

Scratches, rust deposits, corroded areas, and damage caused by improper care may not be fully repaired. In this case, go to a smart Authorized Service Partner.

You can learn more about care and cleaning products from the manufacturer.

After the decorative film is removed, a visual difference may be noticed between the surface with decorative film and the surface without decorative film.

ⓘ Go to a smart Authorized Service Partner to treat or repair the decorative film.

Notes on external parts maintenance

⚠ **WARNING** Risk of being trapped due to enabling wipers while cleaning the windscreen

If the wipers begin to move while you are cleaning the windscreens or wiper blades, you may be trapped by the wiper arms.

► Be sure to switch off the wipers and the vehicle before cleaning the windscreen or wiper blades.

Observe the following notes:

Parts	Cleaning and care	Avoid damage to the vehicle
Wheels/tyres	Use water and an acid-free wheel cleaner.	• Never use acid wheel cleaners to remove the dust caused by braking. It may damage wheel bolts and brake components. • To prevent the brake disc and brake lining from being corroded, clean the vehicle and drive a few minutes before parking. The brake disc and brake lining will heat up and dry.
Windows	Clean the inner and outer surfaces of the windows with a damp cloth.	Never clean the inner surfaces of the windows using a dry cloth, abrasive cleaner or solvent cleaner.
Wiper blades	Unfold the wiper blades and clean them with a damp cloth.	Do not frequently clean the wiper blades. Never use strong solvents.
Exterior lights	Use clean water, mild detergents, or solvent-free plastic-specific cleaners along with a soft wet sponge or cloth that does not cause scratches for cleaning.	Do not use organic solvents (such as alcohol, gasoline, adhesive removers, thinners, paint thinners, paint cleaners, carbon tetrachloride, etc.) or strong chemical cleaners (such as glass cleaners, foam cleaners, highly alkaline soaps, de-icers, etc.) to wipe the surface of the combination lamp, as this may cause cracking or damage to the lamp cover.
Charging ports (high voltage battery)	Clean with a clean soft cloth or air gun.	Never use a high pressure car washer or cleaner, such as soap.
Sensors	Clean the sensors on the front and rear bumpers and radiator grille using a soft cloth and vehicle cleaner.	When using a high pressure car washer, keep a distance of more than 30 cm.
Cameras	Clean the camera lens with fresh water and a soft cloth.	Never use a high pressure car washer.

Notes on cleaning the interior

WARNING Risk of injury from plastic parts breaking off after the use of solvent-based care products

Care and cleaning products containing solvents can cause surfaces in the cockpit to become porous.

If the airbags are deployed, plastic parts may break away.

► Never use any care or cleaning products containing solvents to clean the cockpit.

WARNING Risk of injury or death from bleached seat belts

Bleaching or dyeing seat belts can severely reduce them.

This can, for example, cause seat belts to tear or fail in an accident.

► Never bleach or dye seat belts.

Observe the following notes:

Parts	Cleaning and care	Avoid damage to the vehicle
Seat belts	Clean with lukewarm, mild detergent solution.	• Never use chemical detergents. • Never dry the seat belt by heating it above 80°C or making it exposed to direct sunlight.
Displays	Carefully clean the surface with a cotton or microfibre cloth.	• Switch off the display and let it cool down first. • It is recommended that you turn on the screen cleaning mode before cleaning the display if the display is turned on. • Never use any other detergents.
Plastic trim	Clean with a damp microfibre cloth.	• Never attach stickers, films or similar articles. • Never allow cosmetics, insect repellent or sun cream to come in contact with the plastic trim.
Ambient light strip	Neutral detergent is required for routine maintenance and cleaning	Keep perfumes, cosmetics, sunscreen and pesticides away from ambient light strips. If grease described above or strong acids and alkalis come into contact with ambient light strips, wipe off them in time to

Parts	Cleaning and care	Avoid damage to the vehicle
		avoid cracking the ambient light strips.
Roof lining	Clean with a brush or dry cleaner.	
Carpets	Use carpet or fabric cleaner	
Genuine leather seat covers	Clean them with a wet cloth and then wipe them with a dry cloth.	• Never soak the leather. • Never use a microfibre cloth.
Seat covers	Clean with a damp cloth.	Never use a microfibre cloth.
Imitation leather seat covers	Clean the entire seat cover with a damp cotton cloth and a 1% soapy water solution.	• Never use a microfibre cloth. • Never use corrosive substances, such as 84 disinfectant liquid, bleaching powder, laundry detergent, kitchenware cleaner and toilet cleaner. • Never use liquids that may contain organic solvents, such as perfume, in-car diffusers and air fresheners, particularly if the product's packaging clearly states that "This product is flammable. Keep it away from fire and heat sources during use".
Cloth seat covers	Clean the entire seat cover with a damp microfibre cloth and a 1% soapy water solution.	

Batteries

Notes on the 12 V battery

WARNING Risk of accident caused by operating the 12 V battery improperly

Operating the 12 V battery improperly may cause risks such as short circuit. This can lead to function restrictions in the safety-relevant systems, such as lighting system, anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system. The operating safety of your vehicle may be restricted.

- ► In the event of a short circuit or a similar incident, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner immediately.
- ► Do not continue driving.
- ► It is recommended to have the work related to the 12 V battery carried out at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

For safety reasons, it is recommended that you only use the 12 V batteries that have been tested and approved by smart for your vehicle. Such 12 V batteries feature enhanced impact protection to prevent acid burns of occupants in the vehicle due to the damaged 12 V battery in the event of an accident.

WARNING Risk of explosion from electrostatic accumulation

The electrostatic accumulation can cause sparks which may ignite the highly flammable gas mixture in the 12 V battery.

- ► Before operating the 12 V battery, touch the vehicle metal body part to release any possible electrostatic accumulation.

WARNING Chemical burn caused by the 12 V battery acid

The 12 V battery acid is corrosive.

- ► Prevent the 12 V battery acid from contacting the skin, eyes or clothing.
- ► Do not lean over the 12 V battery.
- ► Do not inhale the 12 V battery vapour.
- ► Place the 12 V battery out of the reach of children.
- ► In case of accidental contact with the 12 V battery acid, flush off the acid thoroughly with plenty of water, and seek medical attention immediately.

ENVIRONMENTAL NOTE Environmental damage from improper disposal of batteries



Batteries contain pollutants. Do not discard batteries with the household rubbish.

- ►  Dispose of batteries in an environmentally responsible manner. Take discharged batteries to a smart Authorized Service Partner or a used battery recycling point.

To disconnect the 12 V battery, please contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

When handling the 12 V battery, please observe the safety precautions and take protective measures.

 Explosion risk.


When handling the 12 V battery, do not power on the vehicle, use open flame, nor smoke. Avoid any spark.


Electrolyte or acid of the 12 V battery is corrosive. Protect your skin, eyes and clothing from contact with electrolyte or acid. Wear appropriate protective clothing, especially protective gloves, apron and mask. If any part of your body is splashed with electrolyte or acid, rinse it with plenty of fresh water immediately and thoroughly. If necessary, seek medical attention as soon as possible.


Wear protective glasses.


Keep away from children.


Be sure to observe the instructions in the User Manual.

If you need to leave your vehicle unused for an extensive period of time, please consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Start assist and charging the 12 V battery

Contact a smart Authorized Service Partner for start assist or battery charging.

Replacing the 12 V battery

Contact a qualified service centre, such as a smart Authorized Service Partner, for battery replacement.

Notes on the high voltage battery

WARNING Risk of vehicle damage and personnel injury from high voltage system

- ► Do not touch, move or disassemble the high voltage battery, orange high voltage cables or any component with a high voltage warning symbol.
- ► Do not park the vehicle for an extensive period of time in a humid environment, such as a waterlogged parking lot.

WARNING Risk of explosion from excessive internal pressure of the high voltage battery

In the event of a vehicle fire, the internal pressure of the high voltage battery could exceed the critical value. In this case, flammable gas may escape through a bleed valve in the vehicle's underbody.

The gas can be ignited.

- ► Stop the charging process immediately in case of unusual odours, smoke or burn marks.
- ► Leave the danger zone immediately. Secure the danger zone at a sufficient distance.
- ► Call the fire department.

The high voltage battery installed on the vehicle conforms to provisions in ECE R100.03 regarding high voltage battery safety.

To maximize the service life of the high voltage battery, the SOC (state of charge) shall always be kept sufficient. If you need to park the vehicle for a long time, please check the SOC of the high voltage battery. If the high voltage battery is depleted when the vehicle is left unused for a long time, it will be damaged.

If the vehicle is left unused for a long time, run it for a few minutes every four weeks.

If the SOC is low, please charge the high voltage battery.


Explosion risk.


When handling the high voltage battery, do not power on the vehicle, use open flame, nor smoke. Avoid any spark.


Electrolyte or acid of the high voltage battery is corrosive. Protect your skin, eyes and clothing from contact with electrolyte or acid. Wear appropriate protective clothing, especially protective gloves, apron and mask. If any part of your body is splashed with electrolyte or acid, rinse it with plenty of fresh water immediately and thoroughly. If necessary, seek medical attention as soon as possible.


Wear protective glasses.


Keep away from children.


Be sure to observe the instructions in the User Manual.

Fuses

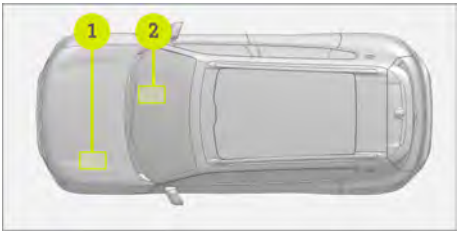
Replacing fuses

WARNING Accident risk may occur when the user changes the fuse

Unauthorized fuse replacement may cause:

- Vehicle damage.
- Fire.

It is recommended that all fuse operations be performed by professionals at the smart Authorized Service Partner.



Location of fuses:

Fuse box 1 in front compartment.

Fuse box 2 below centre console.

Notes on Technical Data

Technical data description

All technical data is subject to the official documents of the vehicle. All data listed in this manual is applicable to the base models without auxiliary devices. For details, please consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Drive mode

The drive mode depends on the configuration of the model. This series of models feature two drive modes, i.e., RWD or AWD.

Electric drive

The type and model of the electric drive installed in this vehicle are listed in the technical data label or registration document of the vehicle.

WARNING Risks caused by not observing the specified technical data

Be sure to use the vehicle strictly according to the specified technical data. If the specified values such as mass, payload, vehicle size and maximum vehicle speed specified in this manual are ignored or exceeded during use, accidents may occur and cause personal injury.

On-Board Electronics

Notes on unauthorized alteration of motor and electronic equipment

NOTE Premature wear caused by inappropriate care

Inappropriate care may result in premature wear of vehicle components and cause the vehicle to lose driving permit.

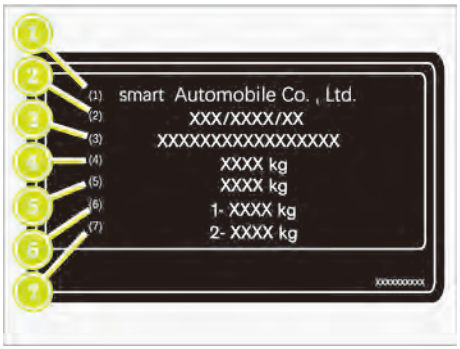
► Always have the repair of electric and electronic equipment and relevant components carried out at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Vehicle Identification Plate, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and Drive Motor Serial Number

Vehicle identification plate



The vehicle identification plate 1 is located on the lower section of the right B pillar.

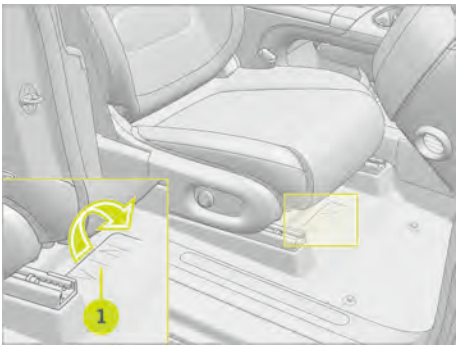


1 Vehicle manufacturer
2 Approval number
3 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
4 Gross vehicle weight (GVW)
5 Gross combination weight (GCW)
6 Maximum axle load – front
7 Maximum axle load – rear

The data in the figure is for reference only. The figures are subject to the vehicle delivered.

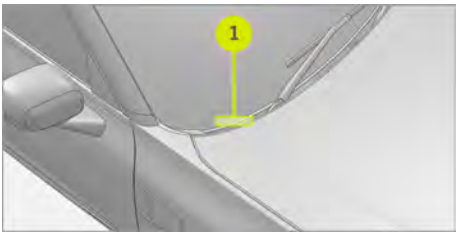
Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Vehicle identification number (VIN) on right front seat cross member



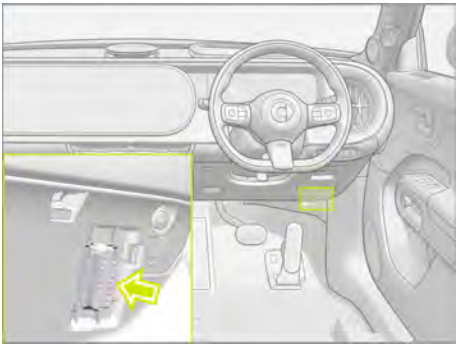
Lift the floor cover 1, then you can see the imprinted vehicle identification number (VIN).

Vehicle identification number (VIN) on lower edge of windscreen



Vehicle identification number (VIN) 1.

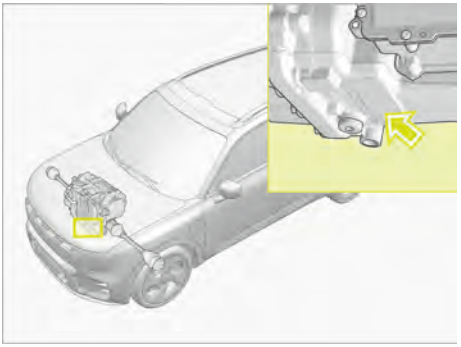
Read the vehicle identification number (VIN)



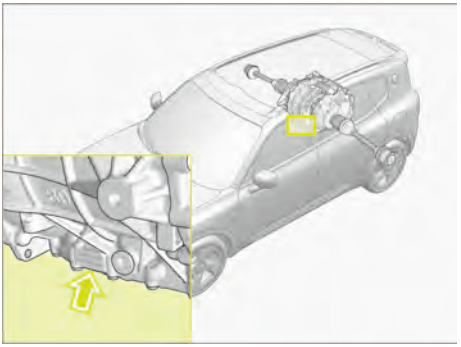
Vehicle identification number (VIN) can be retrieved by a diagnostic scan tool through the data link connector (DLC).

If needed, contact a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Drive motor serial number



The model and serial number of the front drive motor can be found stamped on the underside of the front drive motor.



The label indicating the model and serial number of the rear drive motor is located below the front part of the motor.

For details, please consult a smart Authorized Service Partner.

The E-motor serial number in the figure is for reference. E-motor serial numbers are different among vehicles and may differ from the one shown here.

Operating Fluids

Note on the operating fluids

WARNING Risk of injury caused by harmful operating fluid

Operating fluid may be poisonous and hazardous to health.

- ► Observe the note on the original vessel when using, storing or discarding operating fluid.
- ► Store operating fluid in the original vessel.
- ► Keep operating fluid out of the reach of children.

Operating fluids include the following:

- Lubricating oil
- Coolant
- Brake fluid
- Windscreen washer fluid

Please use the products authorized by smart. smart's warranty does not cover damage caused by using products not authorized by smart.

Notes on the brake fluid

Observe the notes on operating fluid (→ Page 234).

WARNING Risk of accident caused by air trap formed by the brake system

Brake fluid absorbs water in air continuously. It reduces boiling point of brake fluid. If the boiling point is too low, the brake system may form air trap during strong brake.

It reduces brake effect.

- ► Replace the brake fluid as per stipulated interval.

Change the brake fluid at a qualified professional shop regularly.

Please use the brake fluids authorized by smart.

Coolant

Observe the notes on operating fluid (→ Page 234).

WARNING Risk of fire and injury caused by coolant

Coolant may be ignited if contacting with high temperature parts in the front compartment.

- ► Cool the power system before adding coolant.
- ► Prevent the coolant from spilling around the filler cap.
- ► Clean coolant on parts thoroughly before starting the vehicle.

NOTE Radiating heat when the outside temperature is high

If an inappropriate coolant is used, it cannot effectively prevent the power system from radiating heat when the outside temperature is high.

- ► Please use smart authorized coolant.
- ► Observe notes in the smart operating fluid specification

Please drive to a smart Authorized Service Partner regularly to change the coolant.

Notes on the windscreen washer fluid

Observe the notes on operating fluid (→ Page 234).

WARNING Risk of fire and injury from windscreen washer concentrate

Windscreen washer concentrate is highly flammable.

- ► Do not ignite, use naked flame, smoke or cause spark when cleaning with windscreen washer concentrate.

NOTE Damage of outside lighting by inappropriate windscreen washer fluid

Inappropriate windscreen washer fluid may damage plastic surface of outside lighting.

► Use windscreen washer fluid applicable to plastic surface.

NOTE Nozzle blockage caused by mixed windscreen washer fluid

► Never mix different windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen washer fluid can prevent the washer system from functioning due to cold climate. If the washer fluid lines are frozen, never use the washer to avoid damage.

Do not use the washer when there is no washer fluid in the washer fluid reservoir. Otherwise, the service life of the washer will be reduced.

When the ambient temperature is lower than the freezing point, please use the washer fluid containing antifreeze to avoid freezing the washer pump, washer fluid reservoir and washer fluid pipes. Before changing the washer fluid, please ensure that the washer fluid reservoir is completely drained.

Refrigerant

Observe the notes on operating fluid (→ Page 234).

NOTE Damage caused by inappropriate refrigerant

If an unauthorized refrigerant is used, the air conditioning control system may be damaged.

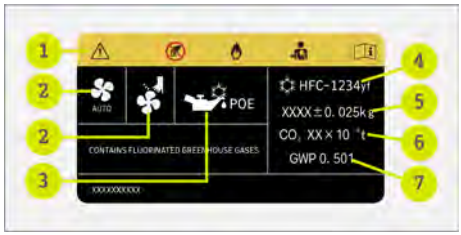
► Only use the approved refrigerant.

NOTE Climate Control damage caused by inappropriate air conditioning compressor oil

► Only use air conditioning compressor oil authorized by smart.

► Never mix the air conditioning compressor oil authorized by smart with other oils.

The refrigerant instruction label is located in the front compartment.



1 Hazard and maintenance warning symbol
2 Fan warning symbol
3 Refrigerant oil type
4 Refrigerant designation
5 Refrigerant filling amount
6 CO_2 equivalent
7 Global warming potential (GWP)

The symbol 1 is a warning for the following situations:

- Possible hazard.
- Maintenance shall be carried out at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Refrigerant filling amount

Model	Refrigerant
Heat pump	925 g ± 25 g
Non-heat pump	525 g ± 25 g

A/C compressor oil filling amount

Model	A/C compressor oil	
	Specification 1	Specification 2
Heat pump	250 ml	210 ml
Non-heat pump	160 ml	170 ml

Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle dimensions

Item	RWD vehicle	AWD vehicle
Vehicle length	4695 mm	
Vehicle width (excluding exterior door mirrors)	1920 mm	
Vehicle height	1705 mm	
Front wheel track	1653 mm	
Rear wheel track	1658 mm	
Wheelbase	2900 mm	

Vehicle performance specifications

Mechanical performance

Item	RWD vehicle	AWD vehicle
Maximum speed	200 km/h (125 mph)	200 km/h (125 mph) 210 km/h (131 mph) (Performance only)
Minimum turning diameter	11.2 m	11.2 m

Passability

Item	RWD vehicle	AWD vehicle
Approach angle (full load)	18 °	18 °
Departure angle (full load)	21 °	21 °
Maximum gradeability*	35%	50%

Item	RWD vehicle				AWD vehicle	
	Specification 1		Specification 2			
Minimum ground clearance	No load	Full load	No load	Full load	No load	Full load
	190 mm	165 mm	197 mm	175 mm	197 mm	175 mm

*: Test conditions of maximum gradeability are as follows:

- A dry road
- Within the gross vehicle weight
- A test site at sea level
- Not towing a trailer

Suspension system specifications

Wheel alignment specifications

Item	Specification
Front wheel camber angle	−44′ ± 36′
Rear wheel camber angle	−67′ ± 54′
Kingpin inclination angle	7.4° ± 1°
Kingpin caster angle	5.6° ± 0.8°
Front wheel toe	3.5′ ± 3′
Rear wheel toe	4′ ± 3′

All wheel alignment values are measured as single-side tyre parameters under the vehicle's factory-set loaded condition (standard equipment and all necessary fluids).

Weight and payload

Item	RWD vehicle		AWD vehicle	
Mass in running order	2,275 kg	2,335 kg	2,420 kg	2453 kg
Gross vehicle weight	2,700 kg	2,760 kg	2,845 kg	2880 kg
Front axle load	W/trailer hitch: 1,099 kg	W/trailer hitch: 1,134 kg	W/trailer hitch: 1,227 kg	W/trailer hitch: 1235 kg
	W/o trailer hitch: 1,149 kg	W/o trailer hitch: 1,184 kg	W/o trailer hitch: 1,277 kg	W/o trailer hitch: 1285 kg
Rear axle load	W/trailer hitch: 1,601 kg	W/trailer hitch: 1,626 kg	W/trailer hitch: 1,618 kg	W/trailer hitch: 1645 kg
	W/o trailer hitch: 1,551 kg	W/o trailer hitch: 1,576 kg	W/o trailer hitch: 1,568 kg	W/o trailer hitch: 1595 kg
Maximum axle load – front	1,260 kg		1350 kg	
Maximum axle load – rear	1,650 kg		1,660 kg	

Battery Specifications

Besides the SOC (state of charge) and ambient temperature, the charging power also affects the charging time. The charging power varies with the supply voltage, current intensity and the model of the power supply.

Specifications of high voltage battery

Item	Specification 1	Specification 2
Rated voltage	398 V	685 V
Rated capacity	191 Ah	146 Ah
Number of cells	128	186

Specifications of 12 V battery

Item	Specification
Rated voltage	12 V
Rated capacity	12.5 Ah

E-motor specifications

Item	E-motor specifications				
	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4	Type 5
Peak power	Front: 165 kW Rear: 267 kW	Front: 165 kW Rear: 310 kW	110 kW	250 kW	267 kW
Maximum speed	Front: 18000 RPM Rear: 18500 RPM	Front: 18000 RPM Rear: 18000 RPM	18500 RPM	18500 RPM	18500 RPM
Peak torque	Front: 270 N·m Rear: 373 N·m	Front: 270 N·m Rear: 440 N·m	373 N·m	373 N·m	373 N·m
Rated voltage	Front: 685 V Rear: 685 V	Front: 685 V Rear: 685 V	398 V	398 V	685 V

Brake system specifications

Brake parameters

Item	Specification
Brake fluid	DOT4
Full travel of brake pedal	156 mm
Free travel of brake pedal	≤ 20 mm

ⓘ Change the brake fluid regularly to ensure the efficiency of the brake system. It is recommended that the brake fluid be changed at a smart Authorized Service Partner.

Reasonable service range of brake friction pair

Item	Specification	
	Front wheel	Rear wheel
Standard thickness of brake disc	30 mm	26 mm
Minimum safety thickness of brake disc	28 mm	24 mm
Standard thickness of brake pad*	18 mm	17 mm
Minimum safety thickness of brake pad*	9 mm	8 mm
*: Include the thickness of the back plate.		

Requirements for wheel dynamic balance

Item	Specification
Manual tyre changer: Residue of unilateral dynamic balance	≤ 5g
Automatic tyre changer: Residue of unilateral dynamic balance	≤ 8 g

Recommended tyre pressure

Specification	Tyre pressure	
	No load	Full load
245 / 50 R19	250 kPa	290 kPa
255 / 45 R20	250 kPa	300 kPa
255 / 40 R21	270 kPa	320 kPa

Detailed publishing information

Internet

For more information about smart vehicles and smart Authorized Service Partners, please visit smart's official website:

http://www.smart.com

https://my.smart.com/service/ (Only applicable to the Malaysian market)

Manufacturer

Zhejiang Haoqing Automobile Manufacturing (Changxing Branch) Co., Ltd.

No. 888, Central Avenue, Taihu Street, Changxing County, Huzhou City, Zhejiang Province, China

Finalization date

Sep, 2026